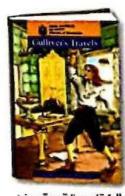
GEM

English LANGUAGE

Hello!





الختاب والقصة مغا



HELLO!

English For Secondary Schools

&

GULLIVER'S TRAVELS

الصف الثانب الثانوي

الفصل الحراسه الثانه

By

Emad Fawzy

Ahmed Fadel

Mohamed Abdel Aal

Ayman M. Ebrahim

Yacoub Moawad



- 2080L 3

Contents



كيفية الاستخدام

استمتع بمشاهدة فيديو لشرح الدرس

أو قم بحل تدريب تفاعلى على الدرس قم بتنزیل تطبیق QR code reader



لمزيد من الفيديوهات والتدريبات زوروا موقعنا

www.aladwaa.com



Where today's food comes from

Objectives

Listening : Listening for gist and specific information

Grammar : Reported speech: statement

Reading : Reading to check predictions and for detail

Critical thinking: Looking at the uses of genetic engineering

Functions : Giving advice and instructions

Writing : Writing a magazine article

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

fertilizer (n)	سماد/ مُخصِّب
many has been added to the second	<i>جینی/وراثی</i>
genetic (adj)	وراثيًا
genetically (adv)	
genetics (n)	علم الوراثة
genetic engineering (n)	الهندسة الوراثية
hunter (n)	صياد (حيوانات برية)
method (n)	طريقة/ أسلوب
modified (adj)	مُعدَّل
modify (v) (y ied)	يعدل
modification (n)	تعديل
organic (adj)	عضوى

pesticide (n)	ميدالأفات
poisonous (adj)	سام
quality (n)	جودة
ripen (v) (ed)	ينضج (للنبات)
ripe (adj)	ناضج
rot (v) (ted)	يتعفن
rotten (adj)	منعفن
spray (v) (ed)	يرش
starvation (n)	مجاعة/الموت جوعًا
starve (v) (d)	يعوت جوعًا

Vocabulary On Listening

add (v) (ed)	يضيف
addition (n)	إضافة
agriculture (n)	الزراعة
article (n)	مقال
chemical (adj) (n)	كيميائي/ مادة كيميائية
continuously (adv)	باستمرار (بدون انقطاع)
crop (n)	محصول
disadvantages (n)	عيوب
discussion (n)	مناقشة/ جدال
farming (n)	الزراعة
fertile (adj)	خصب
flood (n) (v) (ed)	فيضان/ يفيض

improve (v) (d)	بعسن
improvement (n)	نعسین مکاند د
ingredients (n)	مکونات (طعام) اساسی
main (adj)	طبعی
natural (adj)	میسی فیر عضوی
non-organic (adj)	بنع
produce (v) (d)	الناج
production (n)	منع
productive (adj)	التبان """
products (n)	كعبة
quantity (n)	······································
soil (n)	بغترض أيظن
suppose (v) (d)	

abula	17	n-ading
Vocabula	On	Reading

collect (v) (ed)	يجمع
collection (n)	مجموعة
contain (v) (ed)	يحتوي على
damage (v) (d) (n)	يتلف/ تلف
destroy (v) (ed)	يدمر
destruction (n)	دمار
destructive (adj)	مُدَمّر
disease (n)	مرض
genes (n)	جينات
fear (v) (ed) (n)	يخشي/خوف
insect (n)	حشرة
insecticide (n)	مبید حشری

laboratory (n)	معمل
normal (adj)	طبیعی/ عادی
notice (v) (d)	يلاحظ
nuts (n)	بندق/ مكسرات
protect (v) (ed)	يحمى
protection (n)	حماية/ وقاية
protective (adj)	واقی/ وقائی
root (n)	جذر
save (v) (d)	يوفر/يدخر
seed (n)	بذرة
technology (n)	تكنولوجيا
type (n)	نوع
unnatural (adj)	غير طبيعى

Critical Thinking, Communication & Workbook Vocabulary

advertisement (n)	إعلان	protein (n)	بروتين
amount (n)	مقدار/كمية	frequently (adv)	تكرارًا/ في كثير من الأحيان
attack (n) (v) (ed)	هجوم/يهاجم	instructions (n)	تعليمات
change (v) (d) (n)	يغير/ تغيير	label (n)	ملصق بيانات
carbohydrates (n)	الكربوهيدرات	liquid (n)	سائل
decay (v) (ed)	يتعفن/يفسد	particular (adj)	خاص/محدد
fat (n)	دهن	regularly (adv)	بانتظام
remove (v) (d)	يزيل	plenty of (n)	وفرة من
taste (n) (v) (d)	مذاق/يتذوق	remote (adj)	بعيد/ ناءٍ

Focus on Vocabulary

		something that you put on the soil to help plants to
fertilizer	سماد/ مُخصِّب	grow
genetic engineering	هندسة وراثية	to improve it
genetically modified	معدَّل وراثيًّا	describes crops that have been scientifically changed to improve them
hunter	صياد (حيوانات برية)	▶ a person who hunts wild animals
ingredient	مكؤن	something we use to make a kind of food
method	طريقة	a way of doing something
organic	عضوى	produced without chemicals that are harmful to the environment
pesticide	مبيد آفات	▶ a chemical that is used to kill insects that damage crops
poisonous	سام	• describes something that will kill or hurt someone if they eat or drink it
quality	جودة	how good or bad something is
ripen	ينضج	▶ become ready to eat
rot	يتعفن	▶ decay
spray	يرش	to make liquid come out of a container in very small drops
starvation	مجاعة	when someone becomes ill because they do not have enough to eat

Expressions & Idioms

as far as I'm concerned	بقدر اهتمامي
bring new diseases	يجلب أمراضًا جديدة
do harm	یؤذی/ یضر
do exercise	يتمرن
get worse	يسوء

improve the quality of	يحسن جودة
in favour of	مؤيدك
make money	يجني مالًا
over time	بمرور الوقت
ت put genes into plants	يضع جينات في النباتا

Phrases & Prepositions

bad for	سيئ/ مُضر ك
depend on	يعتمد على
good for	جيدل
poisonous to	سام ل
protect from	يحمى من

responsible for	مسئول عن
save from	يدخر من
spray with	يرش بـ
suffer from	یعانی من
worried about	قلق على

Words, Synonyms and Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	مضاد Antonym	di .
genetic	TO FIRST CALL AND A STATE OF	hereditary	acquired	مكتسب
	A REAL PROPERTY AND ADDRESS OF THE PARTY AND A	approach/process	disorganization	عدم تنظيم
method	and the same of th	adjust	disarrange/unfit/disorder	يعبث
modify	1100 1100 1100	The second secon	inorganic	غیر عضوی
organic	- 100 - 140 - 10 Con - 140 - 1	biological	healthy/intoxic	صحى عير سام
poisonous	1	toxic	decline/decay	يتدهور/يتحلل
ripen	POT CLUMPS	develop/mature	flourish	
rot		decay/spoil		
spray	يرش	shower/ sprinkle	collect/dry	جمع/يجفف
fertile	نحصب	fruitful	barren	احل
liquid	سائل	fluid	solid	سلب

Notes on Vocabulary

include

consist of

contain

بعنوی علی (بداخله)

There were four or five boxes containing toys and books.

oks. بنمل/يتضمن (ما بعده يشكل جزءًا مما قبله)

The price of the computer includes 500 pounds worth of free software.

e sonware. بنکون من (ما بعدہ یشکل کل ما قبلہ)

A football team consists of ten players and a goalkeeper.

make	cause	let	allow
We make our	e little girls to cry.		بجعل (المصدر بدون to) بسبب (المصدر + to) برك/ يسمح (المصدر بدون to)
We let our ch	nildren read simple seeds allows farmer	s to get better crops.	برد/يسمع (۱۰۰۰-۱۰۰۰) سمح (المصدر + to)

earth	floor	ground	land	soil
earth	Confederation of the Confedera			الكرة الأرضية/ تراب
The earth is r	ot flat as most peo	pple believed in the past.	جرة	طابق في بناية/ أرضية الحد
The floor of t ground	he flat needs clean	ing.		ارض فضاء
On my way h	ome, my bag drop	pped on the ground.		البابسة
The earth corsoil	sists of water and	land.		نربة (زراعية/ رملية)
This kind of	vegetables needs n	nuddy soil not sandy soil.		

over time

overtime

over time

Language researchers always say that languages change over time. overtime

برود الوقت/ بانتظام . ا- وقت إضافي (في العمل) مقابل (أجر) يدفع مقابل العمل الإضافي

The workers are working overtime to finish the project on time.

Employees who do extra work should be paid overtime.

whose	who's (who is/who has)
whose In the past people were	ضمير وصل (للملكية) hunters whose food came from animals and fish.
Whose bag is that? Is it	(i Slall as Ilal) and
who's (who is/who has) Leila is the student who Write the name of the p	ضمير وصل (للفاعل العاقل) is (who's) working on the project with me. upil who has (who's) finished writing.

Prefix (in-non)		suffix (-icide)			
Prefix ن يعطيان معنى (غير/بلا).	in–nc) اللذار	معنی محددًا ومنها (n	نبل الكلمة لتعطى	ء من كلمة تضاف ة	بادئة هي كلمة أو جز
inorganic	غیر عضوی	incomplete	غير كامل	inaccurate	غير دقيق
Non-organic suffix	غیر عضوی	nonstop	بلا توقف	Non-smoker	
تعطى معنى (قتل/مبيد).	(icide-) التي	ى معنى محددًا ومنها ا	, آخر الكلمة لتعط	وزء من كلمة تضاف	للاحقة هي كلمة أو ج
insecticide	المراجع	مبید حشری _آ	esticide		ميد آفات
herbicide		و مبيد اعشاب	suicide	More Services of the London	انحار (قتا النفس)

Check Point Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: Doctors say that we should avoid foods which a lot of fat. a) consist b) include c) enclose d) contain My parents always me do my homework before I go to bed. a) make c) allow b) cause d) permit I watched the children who sat playing on the of their room. a) ground b) land c) floor d) soil It is cheaper to drill for oil on than at sea, a) ground b) land c) floor d) soil My uncle earns 4000 pounds a month, including a) overtime c) time over d) time limit b) over time

My new flat	of three bedrooms,	a large living room, a	kitchen, a bathroom
and a reception. a) consists	b) includes house has burne	c) encloses	d) contains
2'ndw (a	b) whose	c) who has	d) who was
The company mans a) overtime	agement staff evaluate b) over time	the projects c) time over	d) time limit



Listening Text (1)

Hassan: What was the radio programme about that you were listening to, Ali?

: It was very interesting, Hassan. It was an Ali interview with a farmer. He was talking about organic(1) farming.

Hassan: What did he say?

: He said that organic farming was the best way to Ali farm.

Hassan: Really? I don't think it is. Why did he think that?

: Well, he said that when he was learning about Ali farming, his teacher told him that most fruit and vegetables were sprayed(2) with pesticides(3). He explained that pesticides could be poisonous(4).





Hassan: I suppose so.

: He also said that in the past, the Nile had flooded(5) every year. He (2) Ali explained that this had left fertile(6) soil on the fields, so farmers hadn't needed chemical fertilizers(7) then. He said that the Nile doesn't flood the fields now, but there must be a better way to (4) improve the soil than spraying the fields with chemicals.

Hassan: What is the answer, then?

: He said that he wanted to improve the quality(8) of the soil by adding (6) Ali

Hassan: But surely it's much quicker and easier for farmers to spray their crops with chemical fertilizers and pesticides, isn't it?

(8) 235



: Yes, but he said that using organic fertilizers would be cheaper Ali than using chemical fertilizers.

يتج (9)

Hassan: What about the quantity of crops farmers get, though? Modern farming makes more money than organic farming, doesn't it? What did he say about that?

معدِّل ورائبًا (10)

: He said that organic farms didn't produce⁽⁹⁾ the same quantities as modern Ali farms, so they didn't make quite as much money. But he said that organic food is much better for you.

Hassan: I'm not so sure. Did he talk about genetically modified crops, too?

: He asked the interviewer if he could talk about genetically modified crops, but Ali the interviewer said that this was going to be the subject of the programme the following week.

Hassan: It'll be on next Tuesday, won't it?

: Yes, it will. It's an interesting subject, isn't it?

Hassan: Yes, I'd like to listen to that.



Should our food be modified?

Thousands of years ago, most people were hunters(1) whose food came from the animals and fish that they had killed and from nuts, roots and fruit that they had collected. Later, these hunters lived in one place and became farmers whose method(2) of getting food was to grow crops from the



seeds of wild plants. Over time, they noticed that some plants were better than others. They saved the seeds from these plants and so the quality(3) of their crops improved.

بادون (١)

طريقة (2)

Like plants, all other living things contain genes which control what they will be like. Modern scientists can put genes into plants and animals in their laboratories, and this means that they can modify their genes in (4) الهندخة الورائية order to change what they are like. This is called genetic engineering(4).

جودة/ نوعية **(**3)

People in the past	ate food made of only na	tural	
a) fractions	b) factors	c) mixtures	d) ingredients
	e the woodwork, it may o	cause it to	B. odicilis
a) rot	b) ripen	c) grow	d) collect
16 Millions of people	e die of each y	ear because of food sh	ortage in war areas
a) diabetes	b) thirst	c) allergy	d) starvation
Scientists are able	to genes of p	lants to improve their	qualities.
a) identify	b) modify	c) justify	d) solidify
The government p	provides poor farmers with	h enough money to buy	for their crops
a) reeds	b) leaves	c) seeds	d) deeds
19 Those bananas ar	en't yet - they	're still green.	,
a) ripe	b) ripen	c) ripening	d) rip
20 Hydrogen sulphic	is a gas كبريتيد الهيدروجين de	that has a smell like	eggs.
a) rot	b) rotten	c) rottener	d) rioted
21 We need to make	some to our t	eaching program.	
a) modify	b) modified	c) modifying	d) modification
After two days of	continuous rain, the village	ge was and many	houses were destroyed.
a) nowed	b) flooded	c) fled	d) floated
The young eleph	ants must eat several tim	es daily, or they will	to death.
a) leed	b) grow	c) stoon	d) ctarue
The rocky	is suitable for plant	ing grapes and similar	crops.
a) 1100F	b) soil	c) surface	d) lake
My friend's hob	by is rare stam	ips of different countri	es.
a) cutting	b) correcting	c) collecting	d) detecting
Our team hope t	o their perform	nance before the new	championship.
a) prove	b) remove	c) disapprove	d) improve
Ine Nile used to	flood leaving lands	It was good fo	or farming.
a) lettile	b) poor	c) qualified	d) infertile
28 The	of plants grow under the	ground.	
a) iruits	b) leaves	c) roots	d) branches
we all should pr	otect plants because they	take in carbon dioxid	e and oxygen
a) produce	b) introduce	c) deduce	d) reduce
ine environmer	ntal conditions in this are	a will get better	time.
a) all	b) on	c) at	d) over
18		2000	

He managed to	enough money	to buy a small house.	
a) lose	b) save	c) waste	d) pass
people the	at they can't get rid o	f the causes of air pollu	tion.
	b) frighten	c) bear	d) fear
It's the army's duty t	o the cour	ntry from any dangers.	
a) predict	b) protect	c) prohibit	d) inhibit
is a substa	ance in some foods th	nat provides your body	with heat and energy.
a) Fat	b) Protein	c) Carbohydrate	d) Salt
should co	ontain information al	out the percentage of	GM ingredients in the
food we buy.			
a) Labels	b) Tickets	c) Cables	d) Tables
MOne of or	rganic farming is that	it doesn't make much r	noney.
a) advert	b) advantage	c) disadvantage	d) merit
Playing with the ma	tches caused fire and	a lot of dama	age.
a) made	b) did	c) got	d) had
This programme is	a useful to	the company's famous	set of software.
a) announcement	b) addition	c) discovery	d) intention
This kind of chemic	al fertilizer is availab	le as a powder or a	
a) water	b) syrup	c) medicine	d) liquid
My father is worried	d my broth	ner who is careless and I	azy.
a) at	b) about	c) with	d) for
The price of the roo	m at this hotel doesn	't breakfast.	
a) contain	b) enclose	c) include	d) miss
There are fears that	experimenting on hu	man maynev	w diseases which could
be very dangerous.			
a) bring	b) prevent	c) protect	d) stop
My sister enjoys rea	ding novels about	places of the wo	orld that weren't visited
by many people.			
a) near	b) remote	c) familiar	d) secret
The plane was com	pletely wh	en it hit a mountain.	
a) attacked	b) attached	c) destroyed	d) applauded
Cholera is a	which is spread b	by polluted food and wa	ter.
a) diet	b) disease	c) campaign	d) problem

mm vont autolid	worse, I'll take him	to hospital immediate	ly.
	b) goes	c) gives	d) gets
a) raises	ct to get hor	ne by ten o'clock.	8013
a) information	b) directions	c) instructions	d) data
a) information	omplained that the train		
a) frequently	b) rarely	c) gradually	d) scarcely
The old man was a	ble to lead a/an	life, despite the illi	ness.
a) natural		c) normal	d) abnormal
	ined to crimi		-, donormal
a) attach	b) investigate		d) attack
Ор	en General E	Kercises (Vocat	oulary)
Choose the correct a	nswer from a, b, c or	d:	
The word "flourish	" is an antonym to the	word	
a) develop	b) rot	c) ripen	d) design
I hope the crimina	ls who killed the young	manin jail.	
a) ripen	b) stay	c) live	d) rot
The tourist could f	eel the from th	e waterfall on her skin	as she was in the boat
a) spray		c) spring	
Mercedes Benz is	well known for making	g fuel-efficie	ent cars.
a) quantity		c) quality	
The patient had to	for 12 hours	s before the open-hear	t operation.
a) starve	b) feed	c) eat	d) exercise
15 During a recent vis	sit to Egypt, the famous		
a) developers	b) printers	c) catchers	
7 The boy	the old photo of his p	rimary class so that or	ly the faces remained.
a) carved	b) planted	c) cropped	d) harvested
Works of art are co	onsidered the product of	of a/an imag	rination of a great write
a) organic	b) fertile	c) barren	d) illiterate
The famous tennis	s player was	second at Win-bladen	Championship this yes
a) written	b) grown		d) honoured
	cers wouldn't want to .	c) seeded	a) Honoarev
a) soil	b) wash	c) fill	d) enrich
200			

Grammar

Reported Speech

الكلام غير المباشر

- نستخدم صيغة الكلام غير المباشر عندما نخبر بأن شخصًا ما قال أو اعتقد شيئًا، وهنا يستلزم تغيير الكلمات الخاصة بالزمن والمكان والمكان والمكان والمكان والمكان والمكان والمكان والمكان عير الرمن.

Reported Statement

الجملة الخبرية

١ - يحول فعل القول كالآتي:

Direct	Indirect	
say	say	
says	says	
said	said	
say to	مفعول + tell	
says to	مفعول + tells	
said to	مفعول + told	

٢ - تحذف علامات التنصيص وتربط الجملة بـ that ويمكن عدم استخدامها.

٣- تحول الضمائر حسب المعنى أو كالأتى:

- (أ) الضميران I/we يحولان حسب المتكلم.
 - (ب) الضمير you يحول حسب المخاطب.
- (ج) الضمائر he/she/it/they والأسماء لا تحول.
- مع ملاحظة تغيير صفات الملكية وضمائر الملكية والضمائر المنعكسة على حسب السياق.

my — his/her

our — their

ours — theirs

mine — his/hers

myself — himself/herself

ourselves — themselves

إ- يحول زمن الجملة من المضارع إلى الماضى وليس العكس (إذا كان فعل القول ماضيًا) كالأتى:

Direct	بحول زمن الجملة من Indirect	
"I work hard," he said	He said (that) he worked hard,	
"I am working hard," he said	He said (that) he was working hard.	
"I have worked hard," he said	He said (that) he had worked hard.	
"I worked hard," he said	He said (that) he worked/had worked hard.	
"I will work hard," he said	He said (that) he would work hard.	
"I have been working hard," he said	He said (that) he had be	
"I am going to work harder," he said	He said (that) he had been working hard. He said (that) he was	
"I can work harder," he said	He said (that) he was going to work harder. He said (that) he read to	
"I may work harder," he said	He said (that) he could work harder. He said (that) he wish	
"I must work harder," he said	He said (that) he might work harder. He said (that) he had a least to the	
"I should work harder," he said	He said (that) he had to/must work harder.	
"I ought to work harder," he said	He said (that) he should work harder.	
"I needn't find another job," he said	He said (that) he ought to work harder. He said (that) he didn't need to/didn't have the find another job.	

المنافع المناوف الزمنية وظروف المكان وضمائر الإشارة كالآتي:

Direct	تعول الظروف الزمنية وظروف المكان وضعائر الميسارة		
now	Indirect		
this	then		
these	that		
here	those		
keer on the garden	there		
(two days) ago last week	(two days) before/earlier		
Market Market State Control	the week before/the previous week		
tomorrow morning next (Friday)	the next/following morning		
tonight	the following (Friday)		
tomgiit	that night		

Direct	Indirect		
tomorrow	the next day		
next week	the following week		
today	that day		
yesterday	the day before the previous day		
this afternoon	that afternoon		



١ - لا تتغير الأزمنة إذا كان فعل القول في المضارع (s) tell (s).

- · She says, "I live in a small flat in Cairo."
- She says she lives in a small flat in Cairo.

٢- لا تتغير الأزمنة إذا كانت الجملة تعير عن حقيقة.

- The teacher said, "Paris is the capital of France."
- The teacher said (that) Paris is the capital of France.

أما إذا كان الشيء غير حقيقي أو يعبر عن رأى فلا بد من تغيير الزمن.

- · He said, "China is a poor country."
- He said that China was a poor country.

٣- لا تتغير الأزمنة إذا كانت الجملة قيلت منذ فترة وجيزة:

- · He said just now, "I'm seeing the manager tomorrow."
- He said just now (that) he is seeing the manager tomorrow.

٤- يمكن تغيير الماضي البسيط إلى تام أو يبقى بسيطًا كما هو إذا كان فعل القول ماضيًا (ما لم تحول الكلمات الدالة).

- "I was early for the meeting," she said.
- She said she was/ had been early for the meeting.

Check Point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- They they were going to build a new metro station there.
 - a) said
- b) wondered
- c) told
- d) inquired

- You said you chocolate, but you aren't eating any.
 - a) likes
- b) will like
- c) liked
- d) have liked



is that ob	many mi	stakes before being a c	lever dressmaker
		c) has made	d) will make
Mohamed told me	the windowsb) aren't		d) haven't
He said he	b) listens	c) isn't listening	d) wasn't listening
He his b	b) spoke	oing out with his friend c) told	d) said
Sarah said she	to finish the re	eport. c) is	d) has
		flat but not the neighb	d) are liking
a) liked Omar said he a) has been	going to Rome	the following month. c) is	d) was perpensive.
They said they a) weren't	b) haven't	hotel because it was too c) hadn't	d) hadn't been

Extra Points

• النفير الزمن بعد الروابط الزمنية حفاظا على وحدة الجملة ومعناها.

- "While I was staying in Cairo, I met the minister twice," she said.
- She said she met the minister twice while she was staying in Cairo.

غالبًا لا نحول الماضي التام ولا الماضي المستمر في غير المباشر.

- "I was watching TV while Amal was reading a book."

تحول الحالة الأولى من 1f إلى الحالة الثانية في بعض الحالات، ولكن الماضي في الحالة الثانية والثالثة لا بحول، وكذلك التمني لا يحول. (1st conditional)

• "If you ask Ali, he'll help you." Omar said.

- · Omar said (that) if I asked Ali, he would help me.
- "If my children were older, I'd immigrate." Samy said to me.

(2nd conditional)

• Samy told me (that) if his children were older, he would immigrate.

الم الم الأفعال الآتية بدلًا من said/said to عند نقل الجملة إلى غير المباشر ويأتي بعدها suggested/admitted/denied/analysis من suggested/admitted/denied/apologised for/objected to/insisted on + (v-ing)

- · He said, "Let's watch the news on TV."
- He suggested watching the news on TV.

بعد deny/admit يمكن تحويل الجملة بالطريقة العادية وهي استخدام that وجملة بعدها:

- . He said, "I didn't see the accident."
- . He denied seeing the accident.
- . He denied that he had seen the accident.

€ يمكن استخدام الأفعال الآتية بدلًا من aid/said to عند تحويل الجملة إلى غير المباشرويأتي بعدها ،10 + inf promised/offered/agreed/threatened/advised/refused/reminded/decided + (to + inf.)

- He said, "I'll lend you the money you need."
- He promised to lend me the money I needed.

• يمكن استخدام الأفعال الآتية بدلًا من فعل القول said/said to:

agreed / أكد asserted / أوضح indicated / ذكر mentioned شكا complained / ادعى claimed شرح explained/أبلغ reported/وانق

- · He said. "The service in this restaurant is not good."
- · He complained that the service in that restaurant was not good.

الأفعال الناقصة الآتية لا تتغير في غير المباشر:

would/should/ought/had better/might/used to/could

- · He said, "I used to clean my room every day."
- He said he used to clean his room every day.





لتحنب يعض الأخطاء الشائعة ادخل على

Grammar Exercises

Choose	tho	correct	answer	from	2	Ь	or	d.
CHOOSE	me	correct	answer	HOIII	do	U,	OL	u.

- The teacher us that a lot of English words are borrowed from other languages.
 - a) said

- b) wondered
- c) told
- d) inquired

- Leila said that sheTV then.
- d) is watching

- a) had watched Our teacher said that water below 0°C.
 - b) watched
- c) was watching

- a) freezes
- b) froze
- c) frozen
- d) freezing
- He told me that he would help me to repair my car the
 - a) day before
- b) following day
- c) day following d) previous day
- The expert that pesticides could be poisonous.

a) asked

b) told

- c) promised
- d) explained

6 He said that he	the moral of the	film.	
a) doesn't understand	b) understands	c) hadn't yma	
She told him that he	to a doctor	if he had any health proble	d) underes.
a) could go	b) can go	c) will go	
8 He told her that he say	v the film she	the night before	d) must go
a) recommends		b) recommended	o.
c) had recommended		**	
9 He said that he	to Spain the foll	owing week	
a) went	b) was going	c) will go	***
Zeinab Mon	na that London is the	biggest city in England.	d) has gone
a) said	b) promised	c) explained	an i i
He said that he	for several jobs t	that week	d) told
a) has applied	b) may apply	c) had applied	d\
rie said that he	her playing the n	iano	d) can apply
a) nad seen	b) has seen	a):11 -	d) was seeing
rold the professor I	the following	ng lootuus	-
Depuising a mount of	b) won't attend	-1 1 1 1	d) didn't atten
			a) didii raika
Jan Ouj	Di hae haus-be	3 -	d) would buy
	IO Corre o - 1		.,
7 -220 FCG			d) had moved
a) said	and trated liet took	n, her dad would be hoppy	
He promised that he a) will do	b) told	c) asked	d) wondered
	b) dia	ay.	
She said that her father a) died	o) ala	c) would do	d) had done
a) died	b) had died	fore.	
Ramy says hea) is trying	to get a tan:	c) has died	d) would die
7	D 1		
20 He said that he	because he i	c) had tried appointment in half an hor	d) has tried
a) has to leave	b) is to leave	appointment in half an hou	ur.
ne said that he	me if L	c) has left	d) had to leav
- Cara nein	N 1 12 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1		and and
She told us that she wo	uld come with us an a	c) can help soon as we ready	d) helped
a) will be	b) were	ready	d) have been
42-		c) are	a) nave

They said that they	a lift but ver	w often it didn't work	
a) have	b) have had	e) are having	d) had
My brother said he	an old Roma	on coin in the garden th	ne day before.
a) has found	b) had found	c) found	d) would find
- algumed that w.l. 1			1
a) had slept	b) is sleeping	c) was sleeping	d) has been sleeping
He said that the Nile	the fields n	ow.	D ween't flooding
a) didn't flood	b) hadn't flooded	c) doesn't flood	d) wash the
Mona said that there	a lot of sma	all farms near her gran	d) will be
a) 1S	b) were	c) may be	d) Will be
Zeinab said that she	to visit a far	m one day.	d) is wanting
a) wanted	b) wants	c) has wanted	ber grandparents the
a) wanted Mona told Zeinab th	at she would take her	when she	Hel granel
talling week.			d) visited
a) will visit	b) would visit	c) has visited	u)
Mada said that she	have a sandwi	ch for fullell.	d) can
a) will	b) was going to	c) is going to	bramme the following
a) will The newspaper said the	nat addiction	. the subject of the prog)
week.		Ni- soing to be	d) was going to be
	b) will be	c) is going to be	-,
He said that Cairo	very big.	c) has been	d) shall be
a) is B) He said that Cairo a) is	b) had been she a talk abou	c) has been ut meat on Monday.	d) shall be
a) is B) He said that Cairo a) is	b) had been she a talk abou	c) has been ut meat on Monday.	d) shall be
a) is B) He said that Cairo a) is	b) had been she a talk abou	c) has been ut meat on Monday.	d) shall be
a) is Note that Cairo a) is Ola told the class that a) may give Ola explained that it is	b) had been she a talk abou b) can give vas important to buy m	c) has been ut meat on Monday. c) will give neat from farmers that	d) shall be
a) is B) He said that Cairo a) is Cola told the class that a) may give Cola explained that it wanimals well.	b) had been she a talk abou b) can give vas important to buy m	c) has been ut meat on Monday. c) will give neat from farmers that	d) shall be d) would give after their
a) is B) He said that Cairo a) is Cola told the class that a) may give Cola explained that it wanimals well.	b) had been she a talk abou b) can give vas important to buy m b) look ago that she	c) has been ut meat on Monday. c) will give neat from farmers that	d) shall bed) would giveafter theird) are looking
a) is Description: a) is Ola told the class that a) may give Ola explained that it wanimals well. a) will look Fatma said a moment	b) had been she a talk abou b) can give vas important to buy m b) look ago that she	c) has been ut meat on Monday. c) will give neat from farmers that c) looked for a big company. c) had worked	d) shall be d) would give after their
a) is Description: a) is Ola told the class that a) may give Ola explained that it wanimals well. a) will look Fatma said a moment	b) had been she	c) has been ut meat on Monday. c) will give neat from farmers that c) looked for a big company. c) had worked	 d) shall be d) would give after their d) are looking d) had been working
a) is left He said that Cairo a) is left Ola told the class that a) may give left Ola explained that it wanimals well. a) will look left Fatma said a moment a) work left My uncle explained the	b) had been she	c) has been ut meat on Monday. c) will give neat from farmers that c) looked for a big company. c) had worked a	 d) shall be d) would give after their d) are looking d) had been working d) was speaking
a) is left He said that Cairo a) is left Ola told the class that a) may give left Ola explained that it wanimals well. a) will look left Fatma said a moment a) work left My uncle explained the	b) had been she	c) has been ut meat on Monday. c) will give neat from farmers that c) looked for a big company. c) had worked a	 d) shall be d) would give after their d) are looking d) had been working d) was speaking
He said that Cairo a) is Ola told the class that a) may give Ola explained that it vanimals well. a) will look Fatma said a moment a) work My uncle explained that a) speak The farmers said that the	b) had been she	c) has been ut meat on Monday. c) will give neat from farmers that c) looked for a big company. c) had worked a	 d) shall be d) would give after their d) are looking d) had been working d) was speaking
He said that Cairo a) is Ola told the class that a) may give Ola explained that it vanimals well. a) will look Fatma said a moment a) work My uncle explained that a) speak The farmers said that the	b) had been she	c) has been ut meat on Monday. c) will give neat from farmers that c) looked for a big company. c) had worked a	d) shall be d) would give after their d) are looking d) had been working d) was speaking wing year. d) had used
a) is left He said that Cairo a) is left Ola told the class that a) may give left Ola explained that it wanimals well. a) will look left Fatma said a moment a) work left My uncle explained the	b) had been she	c) has been ut meat on Monday. c) will give neat from farmers that c) looked for a big company. c) had worked a	 d) shall be d) would give after their d) are looking d) had been working d) was speaking

UNIT 9

	Ali soid that he	tired the day befor	e.	
TO	All said that he	b) had been	c) had	
	My brother said that he	on holiday	the following week	d) has been
	a) will an	b) will be going	c) was going	-a ocen
	Dany his fa	ther had bought a new	car the year before	d) had gone
41	a) said	b) says	c) told	
	a) Said	ohev his na		d) explained
4.5	He fold his son that he	b) will have to	a) must	Prained
		b) will have to		d) had to
43		to get high mark	is the following year.	
	a) would expect	b) expects	c) will expect	d) expected
11	He said that water	if I had put it in		ore.
		b) freezes		d) will freeze
45		had finished his poem		TIT TIEEZE
		b) wondered		d) said
46	He what an	noyed him was that his	son came late every nigh	it.
	•	b) told		d) asked
47	He said that he always	wanted to be a doctor a	and sick peopl	e.
		b) helping		d) help
48		d phone me when she		
	a) got	b) gets	c) has got	d) was getting
49	She said just now that:	she long hai	r when she was young.	0
		b) used to have		d) uses to have
50	Sameh told us that mar	y elephants	each year by illegal hunt	ers.
		b) have been killed		d) are killed
		A .F.		440
	₩ Uper	General EXe	rcises (Grammar)	
CI	hoose the correct answ	er from a, b, c or d:		
		I was reading? Have yo	ou seen it?	
	a) Which	b) Who	c) Where	d) What
2		ir homework,		ω,
		b) hasn't	c) hadn't	d) haven't
3			rnet that he could use in l	
	,	b) a little		d) many
4		h while they	c) a few	X:
	a) each other	b) the other		d) other
	The bee stung him on	nore	c) every other	
		b) a	a) the	d) no article
		w/ u	c) the	

a) yourself	a piece of cake. You ar	en't a guest.	d) yourselves
about the	b) yours	e) you	
a) Did he know	b) Shall he know	have cancelled the trip. c) Had he known	d) If he knew
Despite what you the a) done	b) to do	about the environment.	d) do
	I can't come is that b) for	I have to work late.	d) why
Book your noter roo	b) providing	ou won't find a vacancy. c) supposing	d) unless
	Communicati		سراجعة العهادات بالنفصيل يرج
	Language	Functions	(اعطاء النصيحة وا
Giving and res	ponding to advice		
		Responding to A	Mdvice
Giving	g Advice	Responding to A	
		الموافقة	
• You should		الموافقة • I agree with you.	
• You should		الموافقة • I agree with you. • You are right.	
You shouldMake sure youRemember to		• I agree with you. • You are right. • I will do that.	
You should Make sure you Remember to		الموافقة I agree with you. You are right. I will do that.	
You should Make sure you Remember to You mustn't	out don't	• I agree with you. • You are right. • I will do that.	
 You should Make sure you Remember to You mustn't You need Don't + inf It 	out don't	الموافقة I agree with you. You are right. I will do that. Lagree with you. That's not true.	
You should Make sure you Remember to You mustn't	out don't	• I agree with you. • You are right. • I will do that. • That's not true.	
 You should Make sure you Remember to You mustn't You need Don't + inf It 	out don't	الموافقة I agree with you. You are right. I will do that. Lagree with you. That's not true.	
 You should Make sure you Remember to You mustn't You need Don't + inf If I were you, I'd 	out don't	الموافقة I agree with you. You are right. I will do that. That's not true. I'll see. I'm not sure about that.	
 You should Make sure you Remember to You mustn't You need Don't + inf If I were you, I'd 	out don't	الموافقة I agree with you. You are right. I will do that. That's not true. I'll see. I'm not sure about that.	
• You should	out don't	الموافقة I agree with you. You are right. I will do that. That's not true. I'll see. I'm not sure about that.	د (إعطاء التعليمات
• You should	out don'tout don't	• I agree with you. • You are right. • I will do that. • That's not true. • I'll see. • I'm not sure about that.	د (إعطاء التعليمات (stn't
• You should	out don'tout don'tout don'tout.	• I agree with you. • You are right. • I will do that. • That's not true. • I'll see. • I'm not sure about that.	د (إعطاء التعليمات stn't
• You should	ons ould	• I agree with you. • You are right. • I will do that. • That's not true. • I'll see. • I'm not sure about that. 2. You must/mu 4. Don't	د (عطاء التعليمات stn't

Writing: A Magazine Article

- To write a magazine article, we would like to know:
 - 1. Your favourite type of food and how often you eat it.
 - 1. Your favourite type or root and non-2. What this food contains (proteins, fats or carbohydrates) and why it is good or not so
- End with some advice for our readers.

Model Essay

Food is something everyone has to eat in order to survive, but we all want or like to eat something which gives us a lot of pleasure. Most of us have a certain type of favourite dish and a certain way to prepare it and enjoy. I prefer vegetables to meat. I think the dishes of vegetables are very healthy, each one of them has its own quality. But in fact my favourite dish is chicken with rice and courgettes.

I prefer this dish because of the great taste. It also contains the most important food elements. Chicken contains protein and fat. Rice contains carbohydrates. Courgettes, a kind of vegetables, contain vitamins. I usually have a kind of salad with this dish. Green salad which contains tomatoes, lettuce, cucumber and carrots is my favourite.

As far as I'm concerned, everyone should eat different kinds of food. For example, you should eat meat, fish or chicken, as they have lots of protein, but not every day. You mustn't eat too much cheese or butter, as they have a lot of fat. Remember to eat bread or rice as they have carbohydrates. You must eat vegetables and fruits which have vitamins necessary

Skills EXercises

- 1 Write an essay of about (150) words on one of the following:
 - Are you for or against genetically modified crops?
 - 2 How can we be ready for the problem of water shortage?
- 2 A) Translate into Arabic:
 - 1. Some people believe that genetic engineering can add to people's happiness and comfort. Others think that it can lead to serious consequences now or in the future.
 - 2. Being successful is not an easy task. However, having a set of clear aims and giving priority to the urgent ones are vital to achieve success.

- Being flexible means being prepared to learn new skills and to adapt to different situations.
- 4. We must find a solution to the problem of over-population. It can hinder development and cause many other serious problems.
- 5. Exercise is a good way to get rid of the stress and frustration of the workplace. So, we should all get used to everyday exercise.
- Lifelong learning provides us with active minds and confidence to face life obstacles. It also helps any country's economic development.

B) Translate into English:

١ - لا يحب الكثير من الشباب مشاهدة الأفلام الوثائقية التي تثري معارفهم ووعيهم بالعالم من حولهم.

٢- يجب أن تكون المنتجات المصرية عالية الجودة لكي تتمكن من منافسة المنتجات الأخرى في الأسواق العالمية.

٣- كثرة المال لا توفر بالضرورة حلولًا لكل المشكلات وليست الوسيلة الوحيدة للحصول على السعادة.

٤- تعتمد طرق التعليم الحديثة على المتعة وأدوات التكنولوجيا الحديثة مثل الكمبيوتر والإنترنت.

٥- للطفولة أثر كبير في تكوين شخصية الفرد من الناحية النفسية والاجتماعية لذا يجب أن نوليها الاهتمام الواجب.

٦- يجب أن تهتم المدارس بمواهب الطلاب و محاولة تنميتها من خلال الأنشطة المختلفة التي تعزز عملية التعلم.

Enrich your Vocabulary

awareness	وعى	hinder	يعوق
confidence	الثقة بالنفس	obstacles	عقبات
consequences	عواقب	over-population	الزيادة السكانية
documentaries	الأفلام الوثائقية	priority	أولوية
enforce	تعزز	sufficient	کافِ
enrich	تٹری	talents	مواهب
flexible	مرن	task	مهمة
frustration	إحباط	urgent	عاجل/ ملخ



Test 1 Based on Unit 9

لمزيد من الامتحانات على هذه الوحدة ادخل على

Choose the correct	answer from a, b, c	or d:	
He agreed he wou	ld not tell anyone wh	at I	
a) cav	b)	«X I 1.1	d) had said
Many scientists a	re worried that	modified crops will br	ing disagger :
a) academically	b) alphabetically	c) genetically	d) automatical
In some countries	, chemical fertilizers	are now over	r fields by small .
a) displayed	b) sprayed	c) decayed	d) prayed
They promised th	at they us a	s soon as they arrived.	-/ played
a) is going to pho	ne	b) would phone	
c) will phone		d) will be phoning	
Ice and fruit juice	were the two main	of the first ice	cream
a) protections	b) factors	c) components	d) ingredients
6 She told me that:	she was late as she	for her handba	g.
a) had been looki	ngb) has been lookin	g c) will be looking	d) can look
My elder brother	was with jo	by when his first child	was born
a) drowned	b) buried	c) flooded	d) floated
8 Fatma has just to	ld Amira that they	to their friend's	wedding tonight
a) would go	b) have gone	c) were going	d) are going
The biologists sa	id these fish	. upstream in the autun	on.
a) swim	b) swam	c) swum	d) are cuimming
The verb "adjust"	' is similar in meanin	g to the verb	a) are swinning
a) rot	b) modify	c) damage	d) cave
Not many familie	s in Egypt can afford	to go becaus	se this costs a lot of money.
a) genetic	b) dramatic	c) organic	d) economic
I'd better	my credit card in o	case I run out of cash.	u) economic
a) to bring	b) bringing	c) bring	d) brought
IB He said that he	a crossword		d) brought
a) would do		c) was doing	d) had done
They said that the	y on a pic	nic the following week	end
a) had gone	b) might go	c) went	d) have gone
220			a) have gone

The mechanic s	aid that he could repair	my car the	44. 9
a) day before	b) previous day	c) day following	d) following day
The art teacher	said that if you	red with yellow ye	ou get orange.
a) mix	b) mixed	c) had mixed	d) are mixing

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

You are a citizen of the country you were born in. Usually, Citizens live in their country as loyal members of society. Many countries also have options so people who are not natural-born citizens can become citizens of that country. When they complete the requirements, they are called naturalized citizens. As a citizen of your country, you have some rights, duties and responsibilities. The law of any country should guarantee the rights of all citizens and the rights should be the same for all citizens. The rights of citizens are protected in the Constitution. A citizen has the right to speak freely and the right to religious freedom. A citizen who is accused of a crime has a right to a fair trial.

In exchange for their rights, citizens have duties and responsibilities. They have a duty to serve in the army when asked. They should obey all laws. In wartime, they must serve in the armed forces when required to. They must pay taxes to support the services and programs of the government. Good citizens vote in elections to express their opinion on how the government should be run.

In addition to a national citizenship, people are citizens of a state and a city. They have similar rights and responsibilities in each level of citizenship.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

What protects the rights of the	citizen in any country?
a) The citizenship.	b) The responsibilities
c) The Constitution.	d) The trial.
The best title to the passage is	200000000000000000000000000000000000000

- - a) Asking for the rights.
 - b) Paying taxes.
 - c) The responsibilities of the citizenship
 - d) The citizen's rights and responsibilities

- "Doing as you are told" means
 - a) obeying
- b) agreement
- c) voting
- d) exchanging
- People who vote in elections to express their opinion are......
 - a) volunteers

b) respectable and noble

c) greedy

- d) selfish
- B) Answer the following questions:
- 21 What is a naturalized citizen?
- Describe some of the duties and responsibilities of a citizen.
- Mention two rights that should be guaranteed to citizens.
- Why should all people share in the responsibilities of their country?
- Translate into Arabic:

Everyone should realise the importance of agriculture to our life and future. It's the only means to put an end to the problem of food shortage and famines.

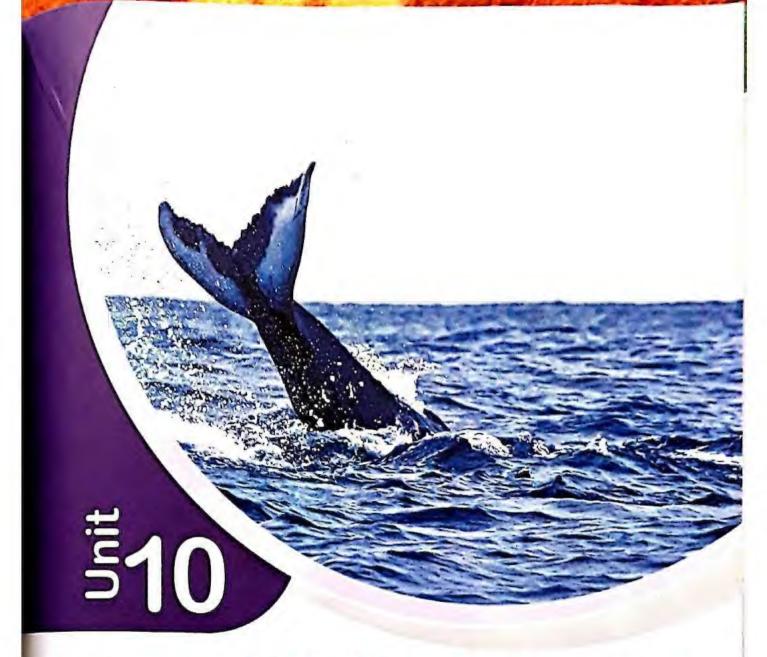
Translate into English:

- يطلب إصلاح أي نظام اجتماعي تعاون الأفراد والحكومة لوضع القواعد الصحيحة التي تساعد على ذلك ولا تضر بالنظام العام المقبول بالمجتمع.

27 Write an essay of about 180 words on the following topic:

How can we be ready for the problem of water shortage?





Herman Melville: Moby Dick

Objectives

Listening : Listening for detail and to interpret information

Grammar : Past perfect simple and continuous

Reading : Reading for detail and between the lines

Critical thinking: Understanding the dangers of being too ambitious

Functions : Making recommendations and giving reasons

Writing : Writing a book review

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

armed (adj)	مسلح
ashore (adv)	على/إلى الشاطئ
attached (adj)	متصل
attack (v) (ed) (n)	يهجم/ هجوم
continent (n)	قارة
crew (n)	طاقم (طائرة/ سفينة)
determined (adj)	مصمم/عازم
determination (n)	تصميم/عقد العزم
drown (v) (ed)	يغرق (للأشخاص)

عدو مع لصيد الحيتان
لمعا
بدائى
غرض
بعيد/ ناء
بعد
صد الحيتان

Vocabulary On Listening

adventure (n)	مغامرة
adventurous (adj)	مغامر
bored (adj)	متضجر/شاعر بالملل
boredom (n)	الملل
come out (v)	یَصدُر (کتاب)
disappointed (adj)	محبط
except (prep)	ما عدا
goods (n)	بضائع
hero (n)	بطل
hunt (v) ed	يصطاد/ يطارد

import (v) (ed)	يستورد
navy (n)	بحرية/ أسطول
ordinary (adj)	عادی
poem (n)	نصيدة
popular (adj)	محبوب
return (v) (ed)	يرجع/يعود
serious (adj)	جاد/ خطير
seriousness (n)	جدية/ خطورة
successful (adj)	لماجح
success (n)	نجاح
succeed (v) (ed)	بنجع
unusual (adj)	غير معتاد

رحلة بحرية

voyage (n)

Vocabulary On Reading		prediction (n)	تبو
Vocab	Ou Hens	ram (v) (med)	يصطدم بشدة ب
aboard (adv)	على متن (السفينة أو الطائرة)	rescue (v) (d)	ينقذ
accident (n)	حادث	route (n) (v) (d)	طريق/ ينقل/ يوجه
captain (n)	قائد/ قبطان	sailor (n)	بحار
coin (n)	عملة معدنية	sink (v) (sank - sunk)	يغرق/ يُغرق (للأشياء)
hold onto (v) (h	eld) يتمسك بـ	storyteller (n)	راوي القصة

Critical Thinking, Communication & Workbook Vocabulary

offer (v) (ed)

predict (v) (ed)

achieve (v) (d)	يحقق/ينجز	goal (n)	هدف
activity (n)	نشاط	human (adj)	بشری/ إنسانی
ambitious (adj)	طموح	incredible (adj)	غير معقول/ رائع
ambition (n)	طموح	message (n)	رسالة
avoid (v) (ed)	يتجنب	old-fashioned (adj)	ذو طراز قديم
believe (v) (d)	يعتقد	possible (adj)	ممكن
cave (n)	كهف	recommend (v) (ed)	یرشح/ یوصی بـ
character (n)	شخصية	recommendation (n)	ترشيح/ توصية
comment (n)	تعليق	report (n)	تقزير
conference (n)	مؤتمر	reviewer (n)	ناقد
crash (v) (ed)	يصطدم	review (n)	مراجعة/ نقد
details (n)	تفاصيل	simple (adj)	بسيط
draft (n)	مسودة	special (adj)	خاص
enemy (n)	عدو	storm (n)	عاصفة
exactly (adv)	بالضبط	title (n)	عنوان (كتاب)
excitement (n)	إثارة	unfortunately (adv)	لسوء الحظ

Focus on Vocabulary

irmed	مسلح	describes someone or something that carries weapons
ashore	إلى الشاطئ	onto or towards the side of a lake, river, sea or ocean
nttached	متصل/ملحق	▶ joined or fixed to something
attack	يهاجم	try to hurt or damage by using physical violence
continent	قارة	▶ a large area of land that contains several countries
crew	طاقم	the people who work on a ship
determined	مصمم	 describes someone who wants to do something very much
drown	يغرق	die by sinking into water and not being able to breath
enemy	عدو	someone who doesn't like you
harpoon	رمح الصيد	▶ a weapon like a spear
navy	بحرية/الأسطول	▶ the people and ships that a country has to protect it
ocean	محيط	one of the large areas of salt water that cover most of the Earth
primitive	بدائی	belonging to an early stage of the development of humans or animals
purpose	غرض	a reason for doing something
remote	بعيد/ ناءٍ	▶ far away in distance or time
whaling	صيد الحيتان	***************************************

Expressions & Idioms

at the beginning	في البداية
at the time of	في وقت
born into a family	يولد في أسرة
fall to his death	يلقى حتفه

in his mid-twenties	في منتصف العشرينيات
reach a goal	يحقق هدفا
win his fight with	يكسب معركته مع
work on a novel	يعمل في تأليف رواية

Phrases & Prepositions

armed with	مسلح بـ
attached to	متصل بـ
bored with	شاعر بالملل من
come out	يظهر/ يصدر

crash into	يصطدم بـ
look for	يبحث عن
think of	يفكر في
wait for	ينتظر

Words, Synonyms and Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	المضاد Antonym
ashore	للشاطئ	on land	aboard/at sea على متن السفينة
determined	مصمم/ عاقد العزم	decisive/persistent	undetermined غير مصمم
drown	يغرق	immerse/sink	float
enemy	عدو	foe/rival	مؤید/ صدیق supporter/friend
primitive	بدائى	undeveloped	سمال modern/cultured حدیث/ مثقف
purpose	غرض	target/desire	dislike/accident کره/نفور/مصادفة
remote	بعيد/ ناءِ	distant	close/nearby قریب/ مجاور
bored	متضجر/ شاعر بالملإ	tired/disinterested	interested/excited مهتم/متحمس
ordinary	عادى	normal	extraordinary متميز
popular	مشهور/محبوب	famous/favoured	unknown/unpopular غير معروف/غير محبوب
rescue	ينقذ	keep/conserve	endanger يعرض للخطر

Notes on Vocabulary

voyage	flight	trip	journey	picnic
voyage The explorer flight	's voyage on the	e ocean was ama	zing.	لة بحرية
	ess of the plane	helped me to enjo	oy my flight to Lone	
	ent on a busines	ss trip to China to	buy new machines	
-	e train journey t	o Aswan was tiri	ng, we enjoyed the	لة طويلة (غالبًا برية) sights.
City people	usually enjoy p	icnics to the cour	ntryside.	i

recommend	advise

recommend

- ▶ My boss recommended me for the new management department.
- Ali recommended me all Taha Hussein's books to read.

advise

لاحظ استخدام مفعول قبل صيغة (.to + inf) بنسع (بفعل شيء)

My mother always advises me to work hard to get high marks.

except	accept	expect
except (for)		أيعاعدا
All the team were the accept	re except (for) Ahmed Hegazi, w	ho was injured.
They offered her a jo	b, and she accepted at once.	
I was happy to accep expect	my father's present on my birthe	day. غونع
▶ He expected his father	er to be angry with him for comin	or late

erew staff cast

الماهم (مجموعة من الأشخاص يقومون بتشغيل مركبة مثل سفينة/ طائرة)

My friend joined the crew of a large fishing boat.

المسلمان المعمل على شركة أو مؤسسة

المعمل على شركة أو مؤسسة

On Wednesdays there's our company's weekly staff meeting.

وماقم العمل على مسرحية أو غيلم

War and legendary films have a cast of thousands.

route road street

الاریق/ مسار بین مکانین

| The road from Cairo to Sharqia goes through some beautiful countryside.

| She crossed the street and walked into the bank.

review revision

۱ - مراجعة/ إعادة نظر

Ali hasn't done enough revision for tomorrow's exam.

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 this film for all people who like adventure films.
 - a) regret

a) except

- b) recommend
- e) advise
- d) consult
- Mona will be late for the party, as usual.
 - b) accept
- e) expect
- d) excerpt

crew staff cast

طاقم (مجموعة من الأشخاص يقومون بتشغيل مركبة مثل سفينة/ طاثرة)

My friend joined the crew of a large fishing boat.

Ambulance crews worked hard to rescue people in the terrible accident.

staff

طاقم عمل في شركة أو مؤسسة

On Wednesdays there's our company's weekly staff meeting.

cast

طاقم العمل في مسرحية أو فيلم

War and legendary films have a cast of thousands.

route road street

route

I live on a bus route so I can easily get to work.

road

طريق ممهد يربط بين مدينتين

طریق/ مسار بین مکانین

The road from Cairo to Sharqia goes through some beautiful countryside.

street

شارع داخل المدينة

If She crossed the street and walked into the bank.

review revision

review

١ - مراجعة/ إعادة نظر

۲ – نقد/ مقال نقدی

No one has yet carried out a review of the security system.

The singer's new album has had very good reviews.

revision

مراجعة/ إعادة نظر

Ali hasn't done enough revision for tomorrow's exam.

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

I I this film for all people who like adventure films.

a) regret

b) recommend

c) advise

d) consult

I Mona will be late for the party, as usual.

a) except

b) accept

c) expect

d) excerpt

storm. a) voyage The historical pla	b) flight	c) picnic of actors who played	d) expedition different roles.
a) crew	b) staff	c) cast	d) team
	ellent when	it was first seen.	
a) revisions	b) essays	c) paragraphs	d) reviews
I bought these su	nglasses from a	seller in the city.	
a) road	b) street	c) route	d) ring
We sat on the riv	er bank and had a		
a) voyage	b) flight	c) journey	d) picnic
A good education	n is often the best	to a good job.	
a) route	b) road	c) street	d) path



Listening Text ()

Voice:

When his novel, Moby Dick, came out in 1851, Herman Melville had been writing for five years. He had already written two books called Typee and Omoo and was popular in Britain and America. Today, Moby Dick is his most famous novel but at first people didn't like it. But let's start at the beginning and look at what Herman Melville had done before he wrote his greatest work. Melville was born into a good New York family in 1819. His father, who imported⁽¹⁾ goods from France, died when Herman was twelve. After he had left school, the young boy worked in very ordinary jobs in offices and on farms.

By the age of twenty, Herman was bored with the jobs he had been doing and decided to look for adventure. So, in 1839, he went to sea – first on a whaling⁽²⁾ ship, and later on a navy ship. During one of his voyages he

went ashore⁽³⁾ on the Maquesas Islands and lived for a few months with the primitive Typee people. In his mid-twenties, Melville returned to live with his mother and write about his adventures. Tom, the hero of his novel Typee, spends four exciting months



يستورد (1)

مبد العيتان (2)

للشاطئ (3)

بدائي (4)

with a group of island people. His second novel, Omoo, was about Melville's life on islands in the Pacific Ocean. People loved reading about the unusual life Melville had been living in these strange, remote(5) places, and so both these novels were very successful. In 1847, Melville married Elizabeth Shaw and they bought a farm. Here, Melville worked for eight hours a day on his third novel, Moby Dick, which came out(6) in 1851. This was a serious book and many of his readers were disappointed because it was not the exciting adventure(7) story his first two novels had been. Melville

(5)	ناء	يد/	بع			
PERMIT			-484	-10011	-416	
(6)	درُ	ف				
					4-174	

مغامرة (7)

قصائد (8)

continued to write short stories and poems(8), but wrote nothing important except a story called Billy Budd. Melville had not finished this final novel about life at sea at the time of his death in 1891.



The Story of Moby Dick

Ishmael, the novel's storyteller, went to sea on a whaling ship called the Pequod. The ship's captain, Ahab, had lost a leg when his ship was attacked by a great white whale called Moby Dick on his last voyage. Ahab told his men that the purpose(1) of their voyage was to hunt and kill Moby Dick and he offered a gold coin to the first sailor who saw him.



The Pequod sailed round the continent(2) of Africa into the Indian Ocean(3). When they met other ships which had been whaling in the area, Ahab asked their captains if they had seen Moby Dick. A sailor from one of these ships predicted that anyone who tried to kill Moby Dick would die. After this, there were many accidents on the Pequod, but nothing stopped Ahab. He was determined(4) to kill the whale which he thought of as his enemy(5).

Suddenly, a storm hit the Pequod and one of the sailors fell to his death from the ship. Soon after this, they saw Moby Dick and Ahab sent out men armed(6) with harpoons(7) in a small boat, but the whale

غرض (1) قارة (2)

مصمم/عازم (4) عدو (5)

مسلع (6) رمح صيد الحيتان (7) destroyed the boat. The next day, more boats were sent out and, although a harpoon hit the whale, Moby Dick was strong enough to attack the Pequod. On the third day, boats were sent out again and this time the (9) طاقع whale rammed and sank the ship. Captain Ahab was pulled out on a harpoon rope and died attached(8) to the whale. The boat sank and all the crew⁽⁹⁾ drowned⁽¹⁰⁾ except Ishmael, who held onto some floating wood. He was rescued by another whaling ship and lived to tell the story.

Notes on some sentences from (Listening & Reading) texts

- the novel's storyteller, went to sea on a whaling ship
- لا تأخذ كلمة sea أداة التعريف the لأنها للغرض الرئيسي حيث إن الشخص كان بحارًا. 2 and he offered a gold coin to the first sailor who saw him.
- استخدام him لغير العاقل للتجسيد إذ إنه اعتبر الحوت عدوًا يحارب. 3 and Ahab sent out men armed with harpoons in a small boat

- كلمة armed بمعنى مسلح وهي صفة استخدمت من التصريف الثالث عندما تكون الجملة مبنية للمجهول مثل: armed forces/broken chair/canned food, etc.

4 Moby Dick was strong enough to attack the Pequod.

- كلمة enough عندما نستخدم قبلها صفة نستخدم بعدها .to + inf في شكل المبنى للمعلوم مثل: easy enough to answer/light enough to carry/cheap enough to buy.

5 The boat sank and all the crew drowned.

- نذكر أن الفعل sink/sank/sunk يغرق للأشياء وأن الصفة منه sunken وأن drown/ed/ed يغرق للأشخاص.

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- I Some men broke into the bank and ran away with a lot of money. b) armed
- c) arms

d) permanent

- The applicant sent a recent photo to his application form.
- b) communicated c) detatched
- d) attached
- a) rallied b) rammed c) roamed d) rained
- 4 I don't understand what this machine is for. Do you know what its ______is? b) reason a) purpose c) story d) title

is the a	ctivity or business of hi	unting and killing wha	les.
	b) Fishing		
	It takes ab		
	b) close		
	eir ship and went		
	b) ashore		
S people	are those who lived on	hunting animals thou	sands of years ago.
	b) Advanced		
A little boy fell in	to the river and	while he was playi	ing with his friends.
a) drawn	b) drowned	c) sunk	d) crowned
The honest police	eman was and	d seriously injured by	a gang of thieves.
a) attacked	b) attracted	c) attached	d) attended
My uncle joined	the of a large	fishing boat many ye	ars ago.
a) population	b) crew	c) cast	d) staff
My son works ve	ry hard at school becau	se he is to j	oin a good university.
a) decided	b) determined	c) contributed	d) objected
On 6th October, a	ll the Egyptian people c	elebrate the great vict	ory over the
a) hero	b) champion	c) post	d) enemy
H The Egyptian	are responsible	for protecting our bor	ders at sea.
a) band	b) gang	c) university	d) navy
The Panama Can	al provides a link between	en the Atlantic and Pa	acific
a) rivers	b) seas	c) Oceans	d) lakes
I A is a	sharp metal used for hu	inting whales and big	fish.
a) ruler	b) knife	c) harpoon	d) kev
Europe and Asia	are two whi	ch lie next to each oth	er.
a) continents	b) places	c) islands	d) areas
I don't really like	funny films or books.	I prefer one	es.
a) serious	b) ambitious	c) careless	d) servant
Al Azhar tunnel i	s the quickest t	aken by most drivers	to reach downtown Cairo.
a) road	b) journey	c) route	d) map
We asked the	of the ship to le	et us stay on deck.	,
a) pilot	b) driver	c) rider	d) captain
No one can	when an earthqua	ake happens.	,
a) intend	b) predict	c) attend	d) pretend
During the race a	motorboat struck a roo	ck and began to	-, F
a) sing	b) sink	c) bang	d) shrink

55 Although Taba Hus	sein was born	a big family, he be	came a great write-
_	b) at	c) with	d) into
a) on		drinks in the w	
Conce and tea are	b) aggressive	c) popular	d) unkind
		eds from other countrie	
		c) produce	
		people who wer	
		c) shoot	
The child became	worried when he saw	the look of	over his mother's face,
		c) seriousness	
		from China nowa	idays.
	b) goods		d) deeds
	ime, it was		
	b) out		d) on
30 Road safety rules	are taught to young ch	ildren to roa	ad accidents.
a) attract	b) attend	c) avoid	d) attach
I hope my boss go	ot my that I	was going to be late.	
a) massage	b) message	c) passage	d) mission
The pilot lost con	trol of the plane and cr	rashed a high	h tower.
a) on	b) at	c) with	d) into
It was a great sho	ck that Titanic sank or	its first	
a) night	b) voyage	c) discovery	d) exploration
Treit a fittle	when my team l	ost the match	a) onpia
a) disappointed	b) appointed	c) acquainted	d) imparted
The photo is attac	ched the app	plication form sir	u) impaire
4) 011	D) with	a) into	d) to
36 I definitely	this hotel for its	good service	u) to
a) tell	b) advise	(1) 0000	d) recommend
The of	f the film died in the er	nd, so people didn't like	the film
	MOLKEL	4) I	The state of the s
The biggest	of the match wa	s when Egypt scored th	a) plumoer
Mr Essam has be	en writing	c) exciting of films and plays for te	d) excites
40 The man	to his death, while	c) revivers he was trying to fix the	d) survivors
a) went	b) rose	was trying to fix the	
46		c) climbed	d) fell

Herman Melville	's novel Moby Dick, ca	me in 1851.	
a) up	b) out	c) down	d) back
Many laws and r	ules punish people who	rare animals	S.
a) hold	b) hunt	c) chant	d) grant
My father	to take us to the clu	ub on his way to work.	
	b) borrowed		d) offered
The story is good	i because it is written in	a friendly,l	anguage.
a) abnormal	b) complicated	c) ordinary	d) average
The young boy h	ad Mickey Mouse and	some other cartoon	on his sweater.
		c) personalities	
		ing to reach their	
a) changes		c) goals	
A lot of the mach	nines at the factory are v	ery, so the pr	oducts aren't very good.
		c) fashionable	
I'd like to travel	to do postgra	aduate studies.	
a) abroad	b) aboard	c) broad	d) board
We should work	hard toour i	fight against terrorism.	
a) beat	b) gain		d) win
The minister wa	s asked about the pay in	crease, but made no	
a) content	b) comment	c) winning	d) symbol
0	pen General E	Xercises (Voca	bulary)
Choose the correc	t answer from a, b, c o	or d:	
In a new city, yo	ou've got of s	space to park your car.	
a) seas	b) oceans	c) piles	d) distances
		nce it hasits	
		c) gained	- •
A novel should	not be too fro	om the experiences of it	s readers.
		c) remote	
	me to the ch		,
a) attacked	b) attended	c) attribute	d) attached
My cousin likes	to his food	with hot tomato sauce.	
	b) drown		d) sink
Many drivers ar	e their own worst	driving too close	or driving too fast
a) helper	b) officer	c) enemy	d) tutor
1	wy water		

	now how to	files from database o	nto the hard disk quickly.
A Commont	b) export	c) allange	a) disorganise
a) shock	b) slam	c) surprise	of smoking near children. d) ram
a) waste	rve" is a synonym to the b) rescue	c) grow	d) attack
10 The President a) witnessed	b) assigned	n his recent visit to the c) reviewed	Military College. d) observed

Grammar



The Past Perfect Tense

الماضي التام

التكوين Form	Subj. + had + P.P.	By last week, I had written 5 reports.
النفى Negative	hadn't + P.P.	I hadn't seen him before he talked to me.
Interrogative الاستفهام	Had + Subj. + P.P.?	What had she done before going out?
Passive المبنى للمجهول	Obj. + had been + P.P.	By yesterday, all the tickets had been sold

For an action which happened before another past action or before a stated time in the past:

بمرعن حدث تم قبل حدث ماضٍ آخر أو قبل وقت محدد في الماضي (الحدث الأول تام والثاني بسيط).

Usage الاستخدام

- I punished him because he had made many mistakes.
- ▶ By 7 o'clock yesterday, I had finished my homework.

For an action which finished in the past and whose result was visible in the past.

منغلم لعدث انتهى في الماضي ونتيجته كانت واضحة في الماضي.

▶ He was happy because he had passed the exam.



The past perfect is used with the following time expressions:

Key Words

before, after, till/until, when, by, by the time, as soon as, etc.

- . After I had watched the film, I went to bed.
- . Before I went to bed, I had watched the film.

•My son didn't buy his new mobile phone until I had given him the money.

ملحوظة / لا يجب حفظ قاعدة واحدة لـ until فالمشكلة ليست في الشكل بل المعنى فتأمل الأمثلة القادمة:



- He refused to leave the place until he had taken the money.
- He lived in Cairo until he died.
- He wasn't given the job until the boss had signed the application form.
- He couldn't travel until he had got a passport.

- I will wait here until Ali comes
- I won't help him until I finish (have finished) my work.

0	After + n./v-in	ماض بسيط و g		
	Before + n./v-in	هاض تام		
	• After finishing his w	ork, he helped me.	= After he had finishe	2d
	· Before helping me, h	e had finished his	work. = Before he hel	
0			تيــة:	حظ الفرق بين جمل when الأ
			nple, Past perfect	
	• When I woke up, my		والدي)	ادر والدي قبل استيقاظي (لم أرّ
	- W/I T I		mple, Past simple	
	• When I woke up, my			هر والدي عند استيقاظي (رأيت
	• When I had told him		erfect, Past simple	يرنه اولًا ثم أغمى عليه ثانيًا
0				
	alreads		تى تستخدم مع المضارع التام.	
	• When my fother rot	, just, since, for, e	ever, never, how long	etc.
10			had already finished	my homework.
1	Check Point	3		
(Choose the correct an	swer from a. b. c	or d	
	By the time I met Ar	nal, she	shannin-	
	a) has finished	b) finishes		1) Calabina
	I showed my mother	,	c) had finished	d) finishing
	a) was buying	by board	from the market.	
	a) was buying	b) have bought	c) had bought	d) will buy
	I punished him beca	use hel	ies to his family.	-11-0
	a) had been telling	b) had told	c) was telling	d) has been telling
E	At 7.15 yesterday ev	ening, I	the final	
	a) was watching	b) will watch	() am	d) have watched
5	My brother ate all of	the cake that our	mum	w/
1	a) makes			

b) had made

c) has made

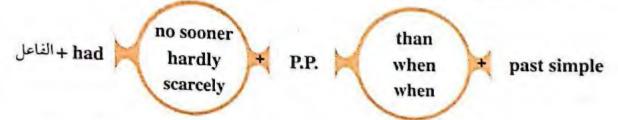
a) makes

d) is made

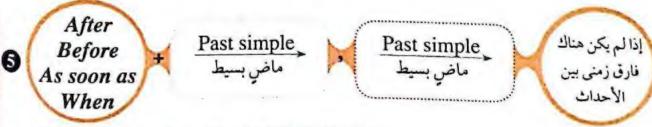
Extra Points



No sooner had Marwa found the money than she reported the police.



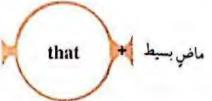
- Marwa had hardly found the money when she reported the police.
- 2 On + v-ing = when + clause
 - •On seeing the thief, he ran away. = When he saw the thief, he ran away.
- ماض تام + فترة في الماضي + By 3
 - By yesterday بحلول أمس, he had reached Paris.
- Having + P.P. = After + Past perfect
 - Having booked the tickets, I took the train to Assuit.



- When he entered the flat, he took off his shoes.
- After he paid the driver, he got out of the taxi.
- · Before he left, he asked me to close the door behind him.
- As soon as he read the story, he gave it to me.

It was only when It wasn't until





- It was only when he had finished his work that he helped me.
- It wasn't until he had finished his work that he helped me.





إذا وجد أكثر من حدثين في الجملة فيجب تحديد الحدث الأول ليوضع ماض تام والأحداث الباقية إما ماض بسيط وإما مستمر حسب المعنى.

- As soon as I saw Ahmed, I realised that I had forgotten his book at home. لم نضع الماضي التام بعد as soon as مباشرة لأنه ليس الحدث الأول وأن الحدث الأول هو (نسيان الكتاب)
- After he got to the station, he realised that he had left the train ticket at home.
- لم نضع الماضي النام بعد After مباشرة لأنه ليس الحدث الأول وأن الحدث الأول هو (ترك التذكرة في المنزل) • I was shopping with my friend when I realised that I had lost my wallet.

الحدث الأول فقدان المحفظة.



Past Perfect Continuous

الماضي التام المستمر

التكوين: Form

Subj. + had been + v-ing

When I met Ali, he had been walking

Negative: النفي

Subj. + hadn't been + v-ing

I wasn't tired as I hadn't been driving for long.

for 2 hours.

Interrogative:

(Wh-word) + had + Subj. + been + v-ing?

What had they been doing before I met them?

الاستفهام

Usage

الاستخدام

١- يعبر عن حدث كان مستمرًّا في الماضي (بدأ وانتهى في الماضي) قبل وقوع حدث ماض آخر.

. They had been looking for a house for six months before they found one they liked.

٢- يعبر عن حدث استمر لفترة في الماضي ونتيجته كانت واضحة في الماضي أيضًا.

- He had been working hard on the garden all day, so he was tired.
- At last the bus came. I had been waiting for 30 minutes.

٣- يأتي الماضي التام المستمر عادة مع أفعال يمكن أن تستغرق فترة طويلة مثل:

wait/ do/ study/ live/ work/ stay/ play/ watch/ sleep/ paint/ read/ write/talk/ run/

walk/ travel

- I was very tired when I arrived home. I had been working hard all day.
- He had been smoking for 30 years when he finally gave it up.
- They had been waiting for an hour before the train arrived.
- What had he been doing when the accident happened?

لا يستخدم الماضي التام المستمر مع الأفعال التي لا تستغرق وقتًا طويلًا مثل:

finish/ take/ leave/ borrow/ send/ join/ buy/ crash/ break/ get

- I left the cinema as soon as the film had finished.

٤ - يستخدم الماضى التام المستمر مع الكلمات الآتية.

مدة زمنية + for/ since/ how long/ before/ until/ all

- Ali had been trying to call me for 10 minutes before I finally answered the phone.
 - ٥- إذا ذكرنا عدد مرات حدوث الفعل نستخدم الماضي التام وليس الماضي التام المستمر.
- When I met Ahmed, he had finished typing 3 reports.

٦- لاحظ أن أفعال الحب والكراهية والشعور والإحساس والرأي والملكية لا تستخدم في الأزمنة المستمرة حتى مع وجود كلمات تدل على الاستمرار في الجملة مثل:

know/ own/ love/ hate/ like/ belong to/ have/ forget/ remember/ be/ believe/ think

- We had had that car for ten years before it broke down.

ولكن إذا تغير معنى الفعل يمكن أن يستخدم في الاستمرار مثل:

- I had been thinking to change my flat all night before my brother came and told me not to do it.

في الجملة السابقة think بمعنى يفكر وليس يعتقد.

Check Point 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

I	for half an h	our before I	realised tha	t I was	dangerously	far away	from
the beach.							

a) had been swimming

b) had swum

c) swam

- d) was swimming
- When Ali went to university, he English for ten years.
 - a) had studied

b) had been studying

c) has been studying

- d) was studying
- I was tired yesterday morning because I until late the night before.

a) had read

b) was reading

c) have been reading

- d) had been reading
- 4 My friend and I for more than an hour before I put the phone down.
 - a) talked

b) were talking

c) had been talking

- d) have been talking
- 5 Although Ali for six months, he didn't win an Olympic medal.
 - a) had been training

b) was training

c) had trained

- d) is training
- 6 When his novel Moby Dick came out in 1851, Herman Melville for five years.
 - a) had written

b) had been writing

c) wrote

- d) has written
- 7 When the bus arrived at six o'clock, I for an hour.
 - a) waited

b) was waiting

c) had been waiting

- d) had waited
- 8 There were floods because it for three days.
 - a) was raining

b) has been raining

c) is raining

- d) had been raining
- 9 Ali wasn't feeling well yesterday as he hard all weekend.

a) had been studying

b) had studied

c) studied

- d) was studying
- When the lights went out, I the match for about half an hour.

a) was watching

b) have been watching

c) had been watching

d) will watch



لتجنب بعض الأخطاء الشائعة ادخل على

Grammar Exercises

choose the correct ar	iswer from a, b, c or a:				
I in the b	ooat for two hours when	I caught a huge fish.			
a) was sitting		b) sat			
c) had been sitting		d) have been sitting			
I heard that Ola	her leg.				
a) had broken	b) had been breaking	c) was breaking	d) has broken		
We for 5	hours when our car ran	out of petrol.			
a) had driven	b) had been driving	c) drove	d) have been driving		
	I me that my computer				
a) had crashed	b) has crashed	c) was crashing	d) had been crashing		
How long	for the train before it a	arrived?			
a) have you been w	aiting	b) did you wait			
c) had you been wa	iting	d) were you waitin	g		
Did you know that	Hany his plar	ıs?			
a) changes		b) has changed			
c) had been changing		d) had changed			
It for ho	urs when the sun finally	came out.			
a) had been raining		b) had rained			
c) rained		d) have been raining	g		
I left home before I	realised that I	my mobile phone.			
a) have forgot		b) forgot			
c) had forgotten		d) had been forgetting			
Osama s	omewhere to live in whe	n Ramy offered him	a room.		
a) found		b) had already found			
c) has already found	i	d) is finding			
I didn't know you	a new laptop.				
a) have bought		b) had bought			
c) had been buying		d) are buying			
I was late because I	for my glasse	es.			
a) had looked for		b) have looked			
c) had been looking		d) have been looking	ng		

		he him for	a few days.
Maher was very i	rude to Karim considering	b) knew only	-
a) only knows		d) had only known	
c) had only been	knowing		
I didn't get your	email because it	lo my old address:	d) had been
the d bean cont	h) had sent	c) Ilaro bons	d) had been sending
II I can't believe yo	ou didn't realise that it	all fight: Every	di have l
a) had rained	b) had been rained	c) had been failing	u) nave been rainin
15 When it began to	rain, the players	for ten minutes.	
a) are playing		b) played	
c) have been play	ying	d) had been playing	
16 We 10	00 km before the rain starte	ed.	
a) have driven	b) had been driving	c) had driven	d) were driving
17 My father	as a police officer for	30 years before he fina	ally retired.
a) has worked		b) had been working	
c) has been work	cing	d) was working	
	the table by the time I	got there.	
a) sold		b) had been selling	
c) have been sell	ing	d) had sold	
	for hours before they stop	ped for a rest.	
a) walked		b) had been walking	
c) have been wal	lking	d) was walking	
	a shower after he had p	layed a football match.	
a) was having	b) had	c) had had	d) had been having
21 We th	e house all day when Tam	er called round.	
a) had been clear		b) had cleaned	
c) cleaned		d) are cleaning	
	his car when he used it.		
a) he had repaire		b) would he repair	
c) had he repaire		d) he repaired	
•	school, the young boy	worked in very ordinar	y jobs.
a) leaves	b) had been leaving		d) had left
	ed exhausted. She		
a) cooks		c) had been cooking	d) has cooked
	nother was aged 30, she		
a) was had	b) had had	c) had been having	d) have had

Aya watched televis	ion after	her lesson		
a) has written	b) writing	C) Whole	d) had written	
By the time Maya f	mished reading the re		two buttles of water.	
a) had been drinkin	K	b) had drunk		
c) drank		d) was drinkin	12	
She went to the doc	tor as her leg	for two days,		
a) is aching		h) was aching		
c) has been aching		d) had been as		
Melville	his final novel about			
a) wasn't finishing		b) had not fini		
c) had not been finis	shing	d) hasn't finis	hed	
He as a c	lerk for seven years	before he resigned.		
a) works			orking d) is working	
My aunt decided to				11
20 invitations.				
a) was already send	ing	b) had already	been sending	
c) has already sent		d) had already	sent	
We since	sunrise, and we wer	e hungry.		
a) had been walking		b) have been v	valking	
c) walked		d) were walking	ng	
Mariam looked so	happy when we saw	her last week. Pe	erhaps she goox	1
grades on her exams	i.			
a) got	b) had been gettin	g c) had got	d) has got	
I asked him what he	since I sa	w him last year.		
a) was doing		h) had been do	ing	
c) has been doing		d) did		
By the time Herman	Melville was in his	mid-twenties, he	all over the world.	
a) already travelled		b) had already	travelled	
c) had already been	travelling	d) has already	travelled	
He looked tired beca	use the day before h	e his fat	her for eight hours.	
a) has been helping	b) was helping	c) had been he	lping d) has helped	
After my work	, I had a break.			
•		c) had been do	ne d) having done	
We in the				
a) were living	b) are living		ving d) had been living	

39	She was upset beca	use she to	o hear from her son for	days
	a) had waited		b) had been wait	ino
	c) has waited		d) has been wait	
40	He stayed in bed th	at day because he	ill all week.	5
	a) had been feeling		b) has been feeli	no
	c) is feeling		d) feels	6
41	Did you know that	Susan be	hind because of her back	d hehavious
	a) has left		b) had left	- Juona Monty
	c) had been left		d) had been leav	ing
42	Bill Gates	lots of money bef	ore he even left school	?
	a) had made		b) had been mak	
	c) has made		d) was making	C
43	Amira looked very	tired. She	the flat for a long time	e.
	a) cleaned		b) was cleaning	
	c) has been cleaning		d) had been clear	ning
44	After he	back home, he reali	sed that he had taken a	nother bag by mistake
	a) went		b) was going	,
	c) had been going		d) had gone	
45	He lived in Cairo un	ntil he in	1990.	
	a) dies	b) has died	c) died	d) had died
46	This car	to Tamer for years b	efore Hussein bought	it.
	a) had belonged		b) had been belo	nging
	c) belongs		d) has belonged	
47	My uncle	the army for 20 ye	ears before he retired.	
	a) has joined		b) has been joini	ng
	c) had been joining		d) had joined	
48	The flat 1	for 3 days before yo	u came.	
	 a) had been cleanin 	g	b) had been clea	ned
	c) had cleaned		d) was cleaning	
49	I happy ι	intil I had passed m	y exams.	
	a) hadn't been		b) didn't be	
	c) weren't		d) wasn't	
50	When I phoned Ahn	ned, hel	etters to 6 of his friend	s for hours.
	a) had been writing		b) has been writ	
	c) had written		d) was writing	

Open General Exercises (Grammar)

I'd real	ly like is some peace at	na quiet.	
I How	b) Which	e) What	d) Where
a) non be difficult l	iving abroad when you	don't speak	international language. d) an
a) the	b) a	c) no article	d) an
- rather	a new TV than have	this old one repaired.	
			d) buy
- Everyone knows t	hat when ice melts, it	into water.	
1 411-110	b) would furn	C) WIII tuin	d) can turn
The cuspect denie	da pair of je	eans from the shop.	
1 ctanl	b) stolen	c) steaming	d) to steal
che insists that we	get up early	y in the morning.	
) could	b) should	c) mignt	d) can
ue has said somet	hing badhe	should apologise.	
a) to which	b) about which	e) which	d) for which
The person	I spoke to had an A	American accent.	
a) who	b) when	c) whose	d) to whom
They set off early	avoiding the	e rush hour traffic.	
a) with a view	b) so as to	c) with the aim of	d) so that
The unhappy cust	omer spoke	to the shop manager.	
THE GILLIANT PROPERTY	b) angrily	c) angry	d) angrier

Communication

b) angrily

Skills

c) angry

اجعة المهارات بالتفصيل يرجى الرجوع إلى ملحق المراجعة.

Language Functions

Making recommendations and giving reasons

Making recommendations

- I'm sure you'd enjoy/love this book.
- You really should read this book.

a) anger

• I can (really) recommend this book (to you)

Giving reasons

- It's a very (exciting/interesting) story.
- The characters are so real.
- You won't be able to put it down.
- It's so (easy) to read.

Writing: A Book Review

Plan a book review using your notes from the Student's Book.

- a) Start with the main details of the book. In your notebook, write about:
 - · the title.

• the writer.

· when the book was written.

- · when you read it.
- b) What is the book about? Write one or two sentences about the story.
- c) Who are the main characters? Write a sentence about one or two characters.
- d) What did you like about the book?

Model Essay

Oliver Twist is a novel written by Charles Dickens, a man who had a difficult life. He had worked since he was a child and he had no money. He gave Oliver, the hero, those characteristics. He wanted to show how hard orphans and poor children suffered in life.

The story is about a child, whose mother had died just after he was born in a workhouse. Oliver was an innocent and pure boy. When he was nine, he was sent out from the workhouse as an apprentice. He worked with a coffin maker called Mr. Sowerberry. The man was kind but his wife treated Oliver so badly that she made him sleep with coffins. Oliver decided to escape from there.

On his way to London, he met a boy called Artful Dodger and then ended up with Fagin the leader of a gang of thieves, who taught children how to steal. Luckily, Oliver also found people who took good care of him and helped him with some problems he had had. A man called Mr. Brownlow cared for him until he knew who was behind his problems.

In my opinion, the novel is very exciting and it makes you want to read more. I like the fact that Fagin and Sikes tried to change Oliver, but he continued to be an innocent good boy. My favourite character is Mr. Brownlow, who took care of Oliver and loved him despite the things he had done, and his past. I liked the end, and I wouldn't change anything in the book.

Skills EXercises

- 1 Write an essay of about (150) words on one of the following:
 - A review of a film which you have just watched.
 - 2 The way advertisements can affect people.
- (2) A) Translate into Arabic:
 - 1. Education is a process by which people acquire knowledge, skills, habits are values. It helps people become useful members of the society.

- Many projects will be built on the banks of the new Suez Canal. This will increase national income and offer many job opportunities.
- The story of Moby Dick teaches us that ambition and revenge should have limits.Without limits, they cause us much harm.
- 4. No real progress can be made in our society where wives and mothers are ignorant. Educated families have an important role in any development.
- 5. Always believe that there is a light at the end of the tunnel. It may seem hard to get to it but you can do it.
- 6. Poverty and social problems may cause some children to live in the streets and become homeless. So, we must try to solve these serious problems.

B) Translate into English:

١- يعتقد الكثيرون أن عمل البحارة مشوق متجاهلين الأخطار التي يواجهونها يوميًّا.

٢- بالرغم من أن قصص المغامرات تمتلئ بالإثارة إلا أنها تحمل رسائل وعبر تفيد القارئ.

٣- للإعلانات أثر كبير في الكثير من قرارات الشراء لدى معظم الناس لذا ينفق المنتجون ملايين الجنيهات عليها.

٤ - لا يجب أن يصبح المال هدف الإنسان الوحيد في الحياة فالكثير من الأشياء الجميلة لا يمكن شراؤها بالمال مثل الحب و السعادة.

٥- يجب أن نشجع الشباب على الالتحاق بالنوادي الرياضية التي تسهم في توجيههم لما يفيدهم ويحميهم من مخاطر التطرف والإرهاب.

٦- يقال إن المتفائلين أكثر سعادة وأطول عمرًا من المتشائمين فاترك التشائم وتفاءل بكل ما هو جميل في الحياة.

Enrich your Vocabulary

educated	متعلم	morals	عِبَر/ دروس مستفادة
extremism	التطرف	national income	الدخل القومي
happiness	السعادة	poverty	الفقر
ignorant	جاهل	revenge	الانتقام
ob opportunities	فرص العمل	terrorism	الإرهاب
limits	حدود	tunnel	نفق
optimist	متفائل	pessimist	متشائم



TEST 2 Based on Unit 10

لمزيد من الامتحانات على هذه الوحدة ادخل على

Choose the correct	answer	from a	a,	b,	c o	ro	1:	
--------------------	--------	--------	----	----	-----	----	----	--

The police found	the man dead	to an iron gate.	
a) protected	b) communicated	c) affected	
The thieves' car	the school bu	is from behind, while	trying to escape.
a) rallied	b) rammed	c) roamed	d) rained
The two boys loo	oked very tired. They	football for t	wo hours.
a) play		b) have been playin	g
c) had been play	ing	d) would play	
4 I was	to come first in the final	l test and join a good t	iniversity.
a) decided	b) determined	c) contributed	d) objected
	that he from	his job.	
a) had been disn		b) had dismissed	
c) was being dis		d) had been dismiss	ing
6 Ann woke in the	middle of the night. She	e looked very frightene	ed. Perhaps she
a) is dreaming		b) had been dreaming	
c) has dreamt		d) dreams	
	in debt and h	as a very serious time.	
a) drowning	b) borrowing	c) spending	d) believing
	looked exhausted. They		
a) had tried		c) have been trying	
	where for my keys, and	d then I found them sti	Il in the door!
	b) chased		
	the robbers, I phoned th		
a) seeing	b) had been seeing		d) see
II The word "endar	nger" is the opposite of	f	
a) waste	b) rescue	c) grow	d) attack
12 He can	see anything without l	nis glasses.	
a) recently	b) wrongly		d) hardly

She at t	nat company for a ye.	ar when she got a promo	otion.
a) will be workin		c) had been working	d) has been working
I for ho	urs when I finally fou	and the house.	
a) would walk	b) walk	c) was walking	d) 'd been walking
We in H	Beni-Suif for three mo	onths before we had to le	eave.
a) were living	b) 'd been living	c) will be living	d) living
The children	all day before the	neir mother came back h	nome from work!
a) had been playi	ng	b) been playing	ome nom work.
c) have been play	ing	d) were playing	
n -141 - 6 11 .		. , ,	

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Think about all the history and stories of our culture. We preserve them by writing them down in books. Today, we also have technology to use. In the early days, though, people did not have a language that could be written. They had only their own voices. They used their voices to pass down their history. They told special stories and spoke about their customs. These stories are called folklore.

Primitive people did not have a written language. Many of their stories were in the form of myths that explained mysteries of nature. Some were legends about past heroes of their culture. Many of the stories included elements of religion and magic. Modern methods of storytelling are available today. However, many tribes choose to continue the custom of oral storytelling and folklore. It is part of their cultural experience.

Many tribes have a history of believing in spirits. They believe that the spirits often take the form of animals found in nature. The animal spirits watch over them.

However, they also see the ancient gods as animal tricksters. A trickster is a character who plays tricks and jokes on others. A trickster often causes trouble or inconvenience. It really doesn't mean any terrible harm, though.

Many traditional ceremonies use animal costumes. The ceremonies honour the animals in the hopes that they will save their tricks for someone else. Other ceremonies are held to help the tribe prepare for a special event. They celebrate things like marriages, births, battles, harvests or hunts.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- People in the past used to pass down their history.
 - a) one language
- b) technology
- c) different languages
- d) voices

- 18 The underlined pronoun "them" refers to
 - a) history
- b) history and stories c) culture

- d) stories
- People in the past believed that their gods could be in the form of
 - a) religious men
- b) hunters
- c) animal tricksters
- d) magicians

- 20 The antonym of the word "primitive" is
 - a) advanced
- b) original
- c) simple
- d) ancient

B) Answer the following questions:

- 21 Why do you think many people continue storytelling even though other methods are available today?
- What is a trickster?
- 23 Why do the ceremonies include animal costumes?
- 24 Mention two modern ways that can be used to preserve our culture.
- 25 Translate into Arabic:

We must forget our disagreements and disputes and unite for the sake of Egypt. It's ou beloved country which has faced all hardships and remained strong against enemies.

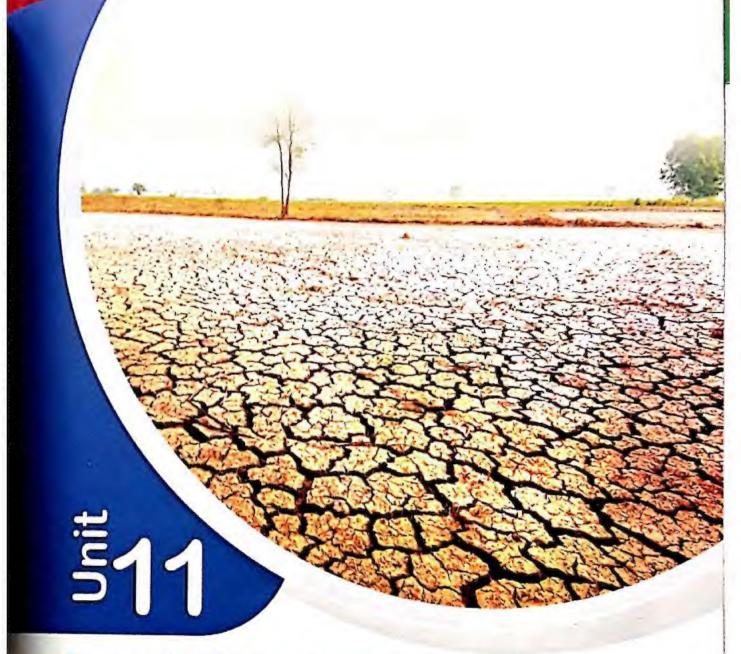
26 Translate into English:

البستطيع أحد أن ينكر أن إصلاح التعليم هو السبيل الأمثل لإصلاح الفرد والمجتمع؛ فالتعليم هو الطريقة الأمثل لبناء المواطن الصالح.

27 Write an essay of about 180 words on the following topic:

A review of a film which you have just watched.





Population, health and the environment

Objectives

Listening : Listening for gist and for specific information;

guessing the meaning of words

Grammar: Future continuous and may be + -ing

Reading : Reading for specific information and for detail

Critical thinking: Understanding the problems of climate change

Functions : Saying you are worried and reassuring a worried person

Writing : Writing about the possible effects of climate change

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

arthritis (n)	التهاب المفاصل
cell (n)	خلية
cure (v) (d) (n)	يعالج/ علاج
decrease (v) (d)	يخفض/يقلل
diabetes (n)	مرض السكري
diabetic (adj)	مصاب بالسكري
flood defences (n)	دفاعات ضد الفيضان
hostile (adj)	عدائي
hostility (n)	عداوة/عداء
mend (v) (ed)	يصلح
North Pole (n)	القطب الشمالي

operate (v) (d)	بجرى عملية
operation (n)	عملية جراحية
progress (v) (ed) (n)	بتقدم/يتحسن/تقدم
rapid (adj)	سريع
South Pole (n)	القطب الجنوبي
tissue (n)	سبح خلوي
trend (n)	موجة/اتجاه
ىيزە (unrecognisable (adj)	
recognise (v) (d)	بتعرف على
recognition (n)	تعرف/إدراك

Vocabulary On Listening

area (n)	منطقة
common (adj)	شائع/ معروف
currently (adv)	حاليًا
damaged (adj)	تالف
development (n)	تطور
difference (n)	اختلاف
disease (n)	مرض
distant (adj)	بعيد
excellent (adj)	ممتاز
healthy (adj)	صحى/بصحة جيدة
health care (n)	رعاية صحية

laboratory (n)	معمل
manage (v) (d)	يدير/يسيطر على
management (n)	إدارة
medicine (n)	طب/ دواء
medical (adj)	طبی
proud (adj)	فخور
pride (n)	فخر/كبرياء
rare (adj)	نادر
repair (v) (ed) (n)	يصلح/إصلاح
technique (n)	أسلوب/ تقنية
tradition (n)	تقليد/ عُرف
traditionally (adv)	تقليديًّا
treat (v) (ed)	يعالج/ يعامل

Vocabulary On	Reading	growing (adj)	نام/ متزاید
Noca Ou	No	growth (n)	نمو
affect (v) (ed)	يۇثر على	ice (n)	ثلج
cause (v) (d) (n)	يسبب/مسبب	import (v) (ed) (n)	يستورد/ استيراد
climate (n)	مناخ	increase (v) (d) (n)	يزيد/ يزداد/ زيادة
desert (n) (adj)	صحراء/صحراوي	melt (n) (v) (ed)	ذوبان/ يذوب
effect (n)	تأثير	object (n)	شیء
engineer (n)	مهندس	population (n)	السكان
environment (n)	البيثة	predict (v) (ed)	يتنبأب
environmental (adj)	بیئی	prediction (n)	تنبؤ
expert (n)	خيير	production (n)	إنتاج
flood (v) (ed)	يفيض	reduce (v) (d)	يقلل/ يخفض
go round (v)	يدور حول	space (n)	الفضاء
gradually (adv)	بالتدريج	total (adj)	إجمالي/كلي

Critical Thinking, Communication & Workbook Vocabulary

conclusion (n)	استنتاج	headache (n)	صداع
control (v) (led) (n)	يتحكم/تحكم	illness (n)	مرض
describe (v) (d)	يصف	make up (v)	يكون/ يُشَكِّل
description (n)	وصف	pain (n)	ألم
drop out (v) (ped)	يترك (الدراسة)	painful (adj)	مؤلم
earthquake (n)	زلزال	protect (v) (ed)	يحمى
employment (n)	توظيف	reassure (v) (d)	يطمئن
equipment (n)	معدات	remove (v) (d)	يزيل
escape (v) (d)	يهرب	result (n)	نتيجة
global warming (n)	الاحتباس الحراري		

Focus on Vocabulary

arthritis	التهاب المفاصل	a disease that causes pain and swelling in the joints of your body
cell	خلية	the smallest unit of a living body
cure	يعالج	▶ to make someone better
decrease	يقلل/ يخفض	▶ to become less
diabetes	مرض السكري	▶ a disease in which there is too much sugar in your blood
flood defence	دفاع ضد فيضان	▶ protection against floods for towns and buildings
hostile	عداثى	 describes something or someone who is very unpleasant, unfriendly and/or aggressive
mend	يصلح	repair something that is broken or damaged
North/South Pole	القطب الشمالي/ الجنوبي	▶ the most southerly/northerly part of the world
operate	يجرى عملية	cut open someone's body to remove or repair a part that is damaged
planet	كوكب	• a very large round object in the sky that moves around a star
progress	يتقدم	▶ to move forward, develop or improve
rapid	سريع	done or happening very fast

tissue	نسيج خلوي	what plant and animal cells are made of		
trend	موجة/اتجاه	the way a situation is developing or progressing		
unrecognisable	غير مميز	changed so much that it seems completely different		

Expressions & Idioms			
at the same time	في نفس الوقت	for example	على سبيل المثال
(be) made up of	مؤلِّف/ مكون من	keep fit	يحافظ على اللياقة
break his promise	يخلف وعده	make progress	يحرز تقدمًا
come true	يتحقق/يصبح حقيقة	take turns	يتناوب الأدوار
do research into	يقوم ببحث على	work on the treatment of	يعمل على تطوير علاج

Phrases &	Prepositions	
يتفق مع	look at	ينظر إلى/يفحص
تأثير على	look forward to	يتطلع إلى
يهرب من	proud of	فخور بـ
يحدث لـ	turn into	يتحول إلى
يزداد إلى	worry about	يقلق على
	يتفق مع تأثير على يهرب من يحدث لـ	look forward to اثیر علی proud of turn into

Words, Synonyms and Antonyms

Word	Meaning	المرادف Synonym	المضاد Antonym	
decrease	خفض	reduction	increase	
hostile	عدائی	adverse	friendly/peaceful محبوب	
mend	يصلح	repair	damage بنلف	
progress	تقدم	advance	decline	
rapid	سريع	speedy	slow	
unrecognisable	غير معــروف/ لا يمكن تمييزه	indistinguishable	recognisable معيز	
manage	يدير/ يتحكم في	run	neglect ليمل	
rare	نادر	unusual	common شانع	
gradually	تدريجيًّا	steadily	isuddenly نجأة	
melt	يذوب	fade	solidify بصلب	
total	كلي/ إجمالي	entire	partial جزئی	

Notes on Vocabulary

cure heal treat

رسنو (من مرض) بعالج/يشفى (من مرض)

- It might be several months before she's fully cured.
- Many formerly fatal diseases can now be cured.

شم (الجروح والكسور)

- The wound took a long time to heal.
- Vitamin K is needed by the body for healing cuts and bruises.

بعالج (يتخذ إجراءات العلاج)

Patients are treated with a combination of medication and exercise.

rare

scarce

are

نادر (غير شائع/غير مألوف جدًّا)

This species of plant is becoming increasingly rare.

carce

شحيح/ قليل (صعب الحصول عليه)

Fresh water and medicines were scarce in the war area.

prefix

suffix

البادئة (هي مقطع يضاف في بداية الكلمة لتغير معناها) ومنها :

prefix

١ - بادئات تعطى عكس الكلمة:

unhappy – unbelievable – unreal – impossible – dislike – inexpensive – nonorganic – بادئات تعطی معانی آخری:

underline - submarine - rewrite - multinational - midnight - antivirus suffix

اللاحقة (هي مقطع يضاف في نهاية الكلمة لتغير نوعها كتحويلها إلى صفة أو اسم أو فعل) ومنها:

believe (v)		believable (adj)	مصدق
agree (v)	يوافق	agreement (n)	اتفاق
envy (v) (n)		envious (adj)	حسود/حاسد
educate (v)	يعلم	education (n)	تعليم
polite (adj)	مؤدب	politeness (n)	أدب
serve (v)	يخدم	servant (n)	خادم

tradition

habit

tradition

تقليد(متبع من بلد أو مجتمع)

By family tradition, it's the bride's parents who pay for the wedding.

habit

عادة شخصيا

Regular exercise is a good habit.

trend wave

trend

There is a growing trend towards payment by credit card.

The old man stood watching the waves breaking on the shore.

molten melt

melt

بذوب (يتحول من صلب لسائل بفعل حرارة)

▶ The snow usually melts by mid March.

molten

منصهر (في حالة سائلة نتيجة للضغط أو الحرارة الشديدة)

▶ The town was buried under a river of molten lava of the volcano.

Check Point	

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- In wartime, food is often and very expensive.
 - a) common
- b) rare
- c) scarce
- d) cooked
- 2 Try to get into the of walking for 30 minutes each day.
 - a) custom
- b) tradition
- c) process
- d) habit
- - a) readable
- b) believable
- c) recognisable
- d) avoidable
- It can take about one month for a broken arm to
 - a) heal
- b) cure
- c) treat
- d) spread
- The book was because the paper is very old.
 - a) unbelievable
- b) unobtainable
- c) unreadable
- d) unacceptable
- 6 The villagers are all keen to keep their local
 - a) customs
- b) habits
- c) traditions
- d) costumes
- 7 The boat was damaged by an enormous
 - a) trend
- b) access
- c) drought
- d) wave
- 8 When the sun came out, the ice began to
 - a) melt
- b) molten
- c) solidify
- d) form



Listening Text (1)

presenter

: Good afternoon and welcome to The World Tomorrow, the programme which looks into the future and predicts what life will be like in 20. 30 or 40 years time. Today's guest is a university professor of medicine



who is currently doing research into new ways of treating common diseases. Welcome to the programme, Professor Osman. Could you start by telling us what kinds of diseases you are working on at the moment?

مرض السكري (1)

تقدم (3)

يعالج (4) Professor Osman: Thank you, of course. At the moment, my research team and I are looking at three of the world's commonest diseases: diabetes(1), heart disease and arthritis(2). I'm pleased to say that we're making progress(3) in all three areas. We think that fewer people will be living with these diseases in the future.

Presenter

: That's excellent news. So are you working on new treatments for these diseases?

Professor Osman: Yes, we are, but the most exciting news is that sometime in the not-too-distant future, we'll be treating these diseases to cure(4) them and not only to manage them.

Presenter

: How is curing a disease different from managing it?

Professor Osman: Well, let's take the example of diabetes. At the moment we cannot cure diabetes. If someone has the disease, they'll always have it. We can only help people to manage it so that it doesn't become worse. In 2030 people may be taking medicines which cure diabetes completely, so that the person no longer has the disease.

Presenter

: That really is very exciting. Could you explain how this is possible?

Professor Osman: Well, traditionally doctors always treated diseases by giving their patients medicines of some kind or by (5) operating on them. In the future, we'll be using new cells from patients to repair parts of their body which are damaged. So if a patient's heart is damaged, we'll (7) be able to mender it with new cells from the patient's own body. We'll also be making new tissue(8) from the (8) one own body. cells in a laboratory.

: This is fantastic. When are we likely to see these developments? Presenter

Professor Osman: I think that I'll be working on the project for the next 15 to 20 years.

: Thank you for being our guest this afternoon, Professor Osman, and for bringing such good news.

Professor Osman: It's my pleasure.

Reading Text

Our Future Environment

Many experts are predicting that the population of the world will increase to around ten billion by the year 2100. At the same time as the population increases, they believe that rapid(1) climate change will affect our environment.

Climate scientists are now looking at the effect of this trend(2) on our growing population. Some believe that in the year (1) ex-2100 the planet(3) we will be living on will be almost unrecognisable(4). رجه/انحاه (2)

Most people agree that over the next 50-100 years, the earth will be getting gradually warmer because of climate change. This means that (3) عرب the ice on mountains, at the North Pole(5) and at the South Pole(6) will be melting very quickly. This will probably cause serious floods and may mean that many people will have to leave their homes. The prediction is (5) المال النمالي (5) that in 2100, many millions of people will be living in different areas or even in different countries because of floods. Also, climate change will



الفطب الجنوبي (6)

turn other areas into desert and this will affect food production. This means that in the future, more people will be importing food from areas tess affected by climate change.

(1) for

It is also possible that the world's population may not increase to the population. If the effects of climate change mean that our environment becomes hostile. It the population of some countries may even be decreasing in around 40 years' time.

Of course, we cannot be sure that any of these predictions will come true. However, we can be certain that scientists and engineers will be working hard to reduce the effects of climate change, for example by building flood defences. to protect growing cities.

Notes on some sentences from (Listening & Reading) Texts

Could you explain how this is possible?

- لاحظ استخدام صيغة غير المباشر (الصيغة الخبرية) (١١١ ١١١) بعد التعبير (Could you explain)

2 and for bringing such good news.

- كلمة (wch) تستخدم بمعنى جدًّا إذا تبعها صغة + اسم، كما أنه لا تستخدم أداة نكرة لأن (news) اسم غير معدود.

If someone has the disease, they'll always have it.

- لاحظ استخدام فعل مفرد بعد (someone) واستخدام ضمير جمع (they) للإشارة إليه.

Thank you for being our guest.

- كل حروف الجر مثل (for) يتبعها اسم أو صيغة (verb + ing).

more people will be importing food from areas less affected by climate change.

- في هذه الجملة حذف ضمير الوصل (which) و (v. to be) لأنه تبعها التصريف الثالث فأصل الجملة هو:
- more people will be importing food from areas which are less affected by climate change.

0 75

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct	t answer from a, b, c	or d:	
The new mobile	phone is	available only in A	merica.
a) current	b) currently	c) currency	d) occurrence
2 Over the next 50	vears, our planet will	get wa	rmer.
a) lightly	b) impossibly	c) regularly	d) gradually
3 This	of the park has been	specially designated	I for children.
a) area	b) era	c) district	a) port
4 Scientists say tha	at the red blood	are renewed a	all the time.
a) calls	b) cells	c) plants	d) points
5 Egypt hopes to n	nake in al	I fields of life.	
a) decrease	b) failure	c) effects	d) progress
6 My mother suffe	rs from	Her joints cause her	great pain.
a) arthritis	b) dermatitis	c) hepatitis	d) diabetes
7 Using	made in laboratorie	s is a great medical	advancement.
a) issues	b) layers	c) tissues	d) leather
8 is a	disease in which the b	ody cannot properly	control the amount of sugar
in your blood.			
a) Amnesia	b) Arthritis	c) Diabetes	d) Insomnia
	said the car was so old		
	b) repairing		
O Scientists of med	icine try to develop a/	an for A	AIDS.
a) disease		c) illness	
II The man was ver	y ill, so the doctors de	cided to	on him.
a) operate	b) process	c) design	d) explore
2 Scientists aren't s	ure that there is intellig	gent life on other	in the solar system
a) plants	b) asteroids	c) planets	d) meteoroids
Many countries in	South Asia have to s	et up flood	to help their people.
a) defences	b) defiances	c) detectives	d) delegates
4 Because of climat	e change, the environ	ment can be	to people.
a) friendly	b) hospitable	c) hostile	d) tolerant
5 The word "	"means changed	so much that it seen	ms completely different.
a) unreadable		b) unrecognisable	-
c) unbelievable		d) unbreakable	

Eating healthy food	d is a popular	in most civilise	d countries.
a) wave	b) trend	c) current	d) tornado
The number of visi	tors to the museum	from 5 m	nillion to 2 million.
a) increased	b) modified	c) reduced	d) decreased
There has been a	growth in t	he use of the intern	et especially among youth.
	b) rapid		
We hope that there	may be a cure for all	diseases in the not-	too future.
a) near	b) bright	c) distant	d) gloomy
In the past 10 years	s, health h	nas received more g	overnmental attention.
a) transport	b) care	c) neglect	d) indifference
Although some dis	eases like diabetes car	n't be cured, doctors	s can them.
a) treat	b) heal	c) damage	d) manage
In most countries,	there are laws that pre	vent hunting	animals and birds.
a) rare	b) scarce	c) extinct	d) wild
Medical	have improved grea	atly in the last twent	ty years.
a) telescopes	b) techniques	c) tactics	d) designs
My friend has sper	nt the last two years w	orking	a book about childcare.
a) together	b) with	c) for	d) on
Scientists are extre	emely worried about t	the ways in which of	climate change
the Ozone.			
a) develops	b) renews	c) affects	d) modernise
Chemical waste from	om cars and factories	is harmful to the	tiviterettianing T
a) environment	b) involvement	c) excavation	d) space
Too many students	in poor countries	out of school	ol because of lack of money.
a) drop	b) fall	c) climb	d) lift
🖥 A num	ber of people are cho	osing to eat healthy	and organic food.
a) grow	b) grew	c) growth	d) growing
You can't trust peo	ple who often	their promises	
a) break	b) keep	c) make	d) smash
It is said that India	has a of	more than one billio	on.
a) pollution	b) popularity	c) population	d) policy
Doctors always adv	vise people to do exer	cises regularly to	fit.
a) keep	b) do	c) make	d) help

Neil Armstrong is	one of the first Ame	Ilcans who	anded on
the moon.	1.)	c) planets	d) galaxy
a) spice	b) space	separate short stor	ries.
This book is made	of twer	c) in	d) up
	1 1	1 111	
a) into The	ost of the project can	ne to about seven in	d) total
1'.	la) quantity	C) Coastar	
35 The woman was a	ble to give the police	e an accurate	of the thief who stole
her bag.			
a) describe	b) described	c) description	d) describing
36 The new laborator	in the college has a	Il the latest	******
a) the analyte	b) evolorations	c) equipment	,
The freezing temporal	eratures had turned th	ne water in the lake	Ice,
a) up	b) back	c) in	<u></u>
38 Climate change is	causing the polar ice	at the poles to	
a) malt	b) heat	c) freeze	u) harden
30 The population in	Egypt has increased.	more that	n ninety million recently.
a) in	b) to	c) at	d) for
40 My brother's drear		inally tru	ie.
a) cone	b) walked	c) come	d) made
Its too early to	any predicti	ion about the match i	results as only ten minutes
passed.			
a) do	b) devise	c) work	d) make
42 School should enco			
a) deterioration	b) amusement	c) entertainment	d) development
			are to protect its systems.
a) export		c) coach	
44 It can be			
		c) painful	
The doctor tried to			
a) reassure		c) fear	
			for his team.
a) experiments			d) results
a) experiments	.,	<i>2)</i> 24303	u) icsuits
78			

Many northern Euro	opeans spend their hol	idays in places with	warm because
theirs are very cold			
	b) degrees	c) climates	d) deserts
The police came to	the that I	he criminal was not	telling the truth.
\ cfildV	ni conclusion	c) attention	(I) EXPERIENCE
Theda	amage from the volcar	no took at least two	years to repair.
a) accidental	b) fictional	c) imaginative	a) environmental
My uncle should b	e careful about his hea	alth since he is	······································
a) diabetic	b) rheumatic	c) chaotic	d) diplomatic
Op	en General E	Xercises (Vo	cabulary)
Choose the correct a	answer from a, b, c or	r d:	
The police was ab	le to catch a terrorist	which was pl	anning for a terrorist attack.
a) tissue	b) crew	c) cell	d) gene
I'm not t	to the idea of changing	the factory equipme	ent, but we can't afford this.
a) hostile	b) favourable	c) friendly	d) violent
He used a piece of	f to clean	his sunglasses.	
a) cell	b) flesh	c) paper	d) tissue
Within minutes of	f winning the medal th	e boxer's name was	on Twitter.
a) waving	b) trending	c) flooding	d) floating
5 Washington and E	Beijing are at opposite	on ecor	nomic policies.
a) poles	b) masts	c) bars	d) sticks
6 The criminals kill	ed a witness for the	before the	e trial last week.
a) judge	b) defence	c) court	d) attack
7 If he doesn't	his ways, the	landlord will ask hir	n to leave.
a) mend	b) fix	c) manage	d) differ
This multinationa	l company	in 50 countries are	ound the world.
a) manages		c) establishes	d) operates
I like my new job	as here is a	of trust between the	people working in this office.
a) weather		c) climate	
	•		l losses to some producers.
a) wave	b) flood	c) trend	d) tornado

Grammar

بجب مراجعة أشكال المستقبل الأتهة،



will + inf.

1. Quick decisions القرارات السريعة

2. Future facts حقائق المستقبل

3. Predictions without evidence التنبؤ بدون دليل

4. Offer العرض

5. Request

6. Threats

7. Warning

8. With the following verbs, expressions and adverbs مع الأفعال والتعبيرات والأحوال الآتية

This shirt is very nice. I'll buy it.

Tomorrow will be the 2nd of March 2019.

Ahmed will win the gold medal in the next Olympics.

I will give you a lift if you want.

Will you help me carry this heavy box?

I will send you off if you speak loudly again.

If you don't care, you'll face many problems.

think/believe/expect/promise/hope/predict/be sure/be afraid/perhaps/certainly/probably/possibly I hope our team will win the next match.

2

be going to + inf.

1. For plans and decisions للخطط والنوايا والقرارات

2. Predictions with evidence التنبؤ بدليل (شيء نراه أو نسمعه)

- 3. Look out! /Be careful! للتحذير من شيء على وشك الحدوث
- 4. Future ambitions

طموحات المستقبل

I've decided to buy a car so I'm going to save money.

There are no clouds. It is going to be a nice day.

Look out! The wall is going to fall down.

I'm going to be a good player.

3

Present simple

Timetables/ schedules للجداول والمواعيد المحددة

- The plane to the K.S.A leaves at 7 p.m. tomorrow.
- The film starts at 10:30 this evening.



Present continuous

fixed arrangements

الأحداث الني تع النوتيب لها

Ahmed is giving a party next Friday. He has sent all the invitation cards,



Future continuous

المستقبل المستمر

التكوين: Form:

will be + v-ing

I'll be playing at 7 p.m. tomorrow.

Negative: النفي

won't be + v-ing

I won't be waiting for you at 10 p.m. tomorrow.

Interrogative:

الاستفهام

Will + الفاصل + be + v-ing?

Will you be painting your room at this time next week?

Usage

الاستخدام

1. For actions which will be in progress at a stated future time.

١- يستخدم للأحداث التي ستكون مستمرة عند وقت محدد في المستقبل.

- Don't phone me at 11 p.m. as I'll be sleeping at this time.
- For actions which will definitely happen in the future as a result of a routine or arrangement (instead of Present Continuous).

٢- يستخدم للأحداث التي سوف تحدث بالتحديد في المستقبل كنتيجة لروتين أو ترتيب (بدلًا من المضارع المستمر).

· I'll be playing golf on Friday.

(I play golf every Friday - it's part of my routine).

- I'll be meeting Fathy tomorrow.

(We work in the same office so we will definitely meet).

3. When we ask politely about people's arrangements to see if they can do something for us.

٣- يستخدم عندما نسأل بأدب عن ترتيبات الأشخاص لنرى ما إذا كانوا يستطيعون فعل شيء لنا.

- Will you be going to the supermarket? Can you buy me some tea?
- 4. We use may be + ing to refer to future events or trends which are possible but not certain: ٤- نستخدم may be + v-ing للتعبير عن الأحداث التي من الممكن أن تحدث ولكن لسنا متأكدين منها.

- Many more people may be living in Cairo in the next 50 years.



Choose the correct a	nswer from a, b, c	or d:	
The programme pr	edicts what life	in 20, 30 or 40	years' time.
a) will be like	b) will be liking	c) will have liked	d) may be liking
We think that fewe	r people	with diabetes and can	cer in the future
a) will have lived	b) will be living	c) shall live	d) should live
In 2030, we	people with di	iabetes.	
a) help	b) will be helped	c) helped	d) will help
Between 2020 and	2030, we	people with diabetes	
a) will be helping	b) will help	c) may help	d) will be helped
5 Ali a g	ood job when he fin	ishes his education.	-
a) may be getting		b) will probably be	getting
c) will probably get	1	d) gets	-
		iversity this time next y	year.
		c) 'll study	
7 This time next week			
		c) will be lying	d) lie
		oday or you	
a) will do	b) may do	c) will have done	d) will be doing
In two years' time, l	mad En	glish at university.	
a) will be studying	b) will study	c) will be studied	d) studies
In five years' time, A	Ali will probably	with his paren	ts.
a) be lived	b) still live	c) be still living	d) still living

Extra Points

 مناك أفعال لا تستخدم في الاستمرار ومنها أفعال الحب والكراهية والرأى والملكية فلا تستخدم مع المستقبل المستمر ولكن إذا تغير معناها يمكن أن تستخدم في الاستمرار مثل.

• This time next year, I will have had my graduation certificate.

لا يمكن استخدام will be having لأن الفعل يملك لا يستخدم مستمرًا.

. This time tomorrow, I will be having my dinner with my family.

الفعل have هنا ليس بمعنى يملك بل بمعنى يتناول لذلك استخدم في الاستمرار.

• لو وجد رابط زمني نستخدم بعده المضارع البسيط أو المستمر ولا نستخدم المستقبل.

• I'll be studying my lessons while my father is watching the match tomorrow.

المستقبل المستمر لا يستخدم في المبنى للمجهول، هنا نستخدم المستقبل البسيط بدلًا منه.

· In the future, other planets will be lived on.





لتجنب بعض الأخطاء الشائعة ادخل على

Grammar Exercises

choose the correct ans	swer from a, b, c or d:		
Will you t	the phone for long? I wa	ant to make some cal	ls.
a) be using	b) using		d) have used
I'll tell Hesham abou	at the party, I	him at work anyway	y.
a) will see	b) may see	c) will be seeing	d) was seeing
	k with Sameh tonight.		
a) have	b) are having		d) shall have
Don't phone me late	r than midnight because	e I then.	
	b) am going to sleep		d) will be sleeping
At this time tomorro	w Sameh for	r his exam.	
a) will sit	b) will be sitting	c) has sat	d) may sit
6 This time next week	, I on the be	ach.	
a) will be sunbathin	g	b) will have sunba	thed
c) will have been su	nbathing	d) will be sunbathe	ed
If you leave your ke	ys with the hall porter h	ne the car	around the garage.
a) is going to take		b) takes	
c) will take		d) will be taking	
I've just got a copy	of this fantastic book so	I it tonig	ht.
a) will read	b) shall read	c) read	d) 'm going to read
I in the A	alps this time next week	t.	
a) will ski	b) will be skiing	c) may ski	d) was skiing
	et us at the bus stop, but		
a) will forget	b) is forgetting	c) is going to forg	et d) forgets
	oliday. This time tomor		
			d) will be swimming
	tists and engineers	hard to reduce	ce the effects of climate
change.			
a) will be worked	b) will be working	c) will have work	ed d) work
My son isn't happy	at his boarding school.	I him to	a day school.
a) will have sent	b) will be sending	c) send	d) 'm going to send

14	Shop assistant: We ha	ve some very nice stra	wherries.	
	Customer: All right.			
	_	b) will have	c) am having	d) will be a
15		I to London	c) am naving	d) will be having
				d) tensor
16		b) will travel		
10	111 2030, people	medicines which	cute diabetes complete	.ety.
	a) may be taking	b) will be taken	c) take	d) Will have taken
17	In the future, we	new cells from p	battents to repair parts	of their body.
		b) may be used		a) Il be using
18	I think that I	on the project for the	e next 15 to 20 years.	**
	a) will work	b) may work	c) 'll be working	d) will have worked
19	In the future, more pe	ople their food	I from areas less affects	ed by climate change.
	- · · · -	b) will be importing		
20	The population of the	world to ar		e year 2100.
	a) will increase		b) will be increasing	
	c) may be increasing			
21	In the year 2100, the	planet we or	n will be almost unrec	ognisable.
	a) will be living	b) will have lived	c) were living	d) will be lived
22	Between now and ne	xt Thursday, I	for an English exam	1.
	a) 'll revise	b) 'II be revising	c) may revise	d) was revising
23	Sayed thinks that his	team next w	veek's competition.	
	a) may be winning	b) will be won	c) will be won	d) will win
24	I wonder what I	this time next ye	ar.	
	a) 'll do	b) shall do	c) 'll be doing	d) do
25		oliday soon. This time r		
	a) will sail	b) will be sailing	c) sails	d) shall sail
26	At 7:30 tomorrow, I	for the airpo	rt.	
	a) will leave	b) may have left	c) will be leaving	d) won't leave
27	In an hour's time, Wa	arda home o	n the train.	
		b) travels		d) will be travelling
28		Salma for he	er final exam.	
		b) will be revising		d) revises
20	/	his own busi		
	a) will be running		c) runs	d) ran
20		you when yo		-,
	a) shall work	b) will be worked	c) will be working	d) work
	a) Shan more		or working	<u>~</u>) -

This player	for a famous team be	etween 2019 and 2023.	
a) has been playing	b) plays	c) will be playing	d) will play
At 9.30 next Monday	y, my father	to London, his plane le	eaves at 9.15.
a) will be flying	b) may be flying	c) will fly	d) fly
At 5 tomorrow I	the final match.		
a) will watch	b) will be watching	c) would watch	d) watching
Ayman can't go to th	ne party. He	all day tomorrow.	
a) will have worked	b) may work	c) will work	d) will be working
Tomorrow afternoon	n we're going to watch	the match from 7 to 9	p.m. So, at 8 p.m. we
the match	1.		
a) will watch		b) will be watching	
c) will have watched	d	d) can't have watche	ed
Mhen the men leave	e the building, the polic	e for them.	
a) will be waiting	b) will be waited	c) wait	d) are waiting
Don't visit me before	re 5 o'clock. I	on the garden.	
a) will have worked	b) will be working	c) work	d) will work
Don't phone me bet	ween 7 and 8, I	dinner then.	
a) will have had	b) have	c) will have	d) will be having
Between now and 1	1 o'clock, you	your exam.	
a) will answer		b) will have answer	ed
c) will be answering		d) answer	
	the house tomorre		
	b) will have cleaned		d) will be cleaning
Perhaps, people	on the moon in	the next decade.	
	b) may live		d) will be living
This time next weel	k, I my drivi	ng licence.	
a) may have	b) will be having	c) will have had	d) may be having
If they prepare well	for the trip tomorrow,	I about it.	
a) will excite	b) will be excited	c) will be exciting	d) may be exciting
Every candidate bel	lieves he the	next president.	
a) shall be	b) will have been	c) will be being	d) will be
In ten years' time, I	and have a	steady life.	
	b) will marry	c) will be marrying	d) am marrying

46 This time tomorrow,	Ali on the	beach.	
a) lies	b) will have lied	c) will be lying	d) lies
47 I like these shoes. I	them.		
	·	c) am buying	d) will buy
		positive and negative	
		c) is having	
49 Let's have a drink w	ith Tamer tonight. It's	his last night; he	tomorrow
a) is leaving	b) will have left	c) leaves	d) will be left
50 I will be cooking w	hile the maid	the house	will be left
a) will have cleaned	b) is cleaning	c) will be cleaning	d) will clean
Оре	en General Ex	Kercises (Gramm	nar)
Choose the correct ar	nswer from a, b, c or	d:	100
		e her. She won't change	. bear and a d
d) tiles	D) ITY	a) truing	
2 The first train to As	ssuit at 7:30	every morning	d) to try
a) is going to leave	b) will be leaving	0)!!! 1	d) leaves
be quiet. The baby	be sleepin	ig in the next room	u) leaves
a) may	D) Would	a) analis	d) should
4 He off t	he light and lay down	on his bed	d) should
a) turns	b) turned	0)	d) is turning
5 I'll never forget	Craig for the	first time.	10 10 10
a) meeting	b) meet	c) to meet	d) meets
6 I run m	uch faster when I was	s younger.	
a) should	b) could	c) was able	d) would
7 Magid has been	ın magic sin	ice he was a child.	
a) interest	b) interestingly	a) int.	d) interested
Rahma	hard for her exams t	nese dave	
a) was studying	b) has studied	c) is studying	d) will study
y You do	the wasning-up. I've	already done it.	
a) needn't	b) don't have	c) mustn't	d) couldn't
	w your pen for a mor	ment?	
a) Would	b) Will	c) Shall	d) May



Communication Skills

براسعة السهادات بالتفصيل يرجى الرجوع إلى ملحق السراجعة.

Language Functions

Saying you are worried and reassuring

التعبير عن القلق و الطمأنة

Saying you are worried

- · I found it worrying.
- I worry about
- I'm afraid
- I'm feeling very nervous.
- It really worries me.
- That doesn't stop me from worrying.

Reassuring

- . It'll be fine
- · Relax
- Look on the bright side.
- There's no point in worrying.

Writing: The effects of climate change on Egypt and North Africa

- Choose an environmental problem and describe how it might affect us in the future. Write down your ideas in a short presentation. You should:
- Describe the problem and say its effects.
- Say what people think about the problem.
- Explain what they think we should do.

Model Essay

Climate change is a serious problem in the world. It affects many aspects of life on the planets. Scientists even say that it threatens our life on earth. Some of the most affected places are the coastal areas which will suffer disastrous effects.

We are worried that it will have serious effects on our country and the region where we live: North Africa. Scientists predict that the weather in summer, which is already hot, will be very hot. This rise of temperature can make some parts in Egypt and North Africa uninhabitable. Therefore, people may be leaving their homes and move to other places. This also may lead to the decrease of food production as a result of droughts. Moreover, it is expected that climate change will cause the ice at the North Pole and the South Pole to melt.

This will certainly lead to the rise of sea levels all over the world. We worry that this too can cause floods in some areas which are near the Mediterranean Sea and the Red Sea. Parts of some cities like Alexandria, Marsa Matrouh, Tripoli in Libya and Casablanca in Morocco could disappear under the water of the sea causing millions of people to die or lose homes.

To conclude, there are serious predictions about the effects of climate change on Egypt and North Africa and it's time we exerted more and more efforts to save our planet and fight this dangerous problem. Governments and individuals should take part in fighting this serious problem and trying to lessen its serious effects.

Skills EXercises

- Write an essay of about (150) words on one of the following:
 - Having a lot of money does not always bring happiness.
 - Ways to help the people with a disability or people with special needs to be useful citizens.
- 2 A) Translate into Arabic:
 - Learning critical thinking skills helps young people to face the challenges of modern age. It also helps them not to fall prey to misleading groups.
 - Scientists are working hard to discover new techniques to cure fatal diseases. This
 will lead to helping people suffer less.
 - 3. The development of medical science has added much to people's comfort and health. No one can imagine the future prospects of it.
 - 4. Scientists, thinkers and men of letters, should be honoured for their great efforts.

 This will help children and young people to follow their examples.
 - Global warming is a serious problem which we should all cooperate to solve. It
 may cause serious effects and threaten life on earth.
 - Before taking important decisions, one should negotiate their pros and cons. This
 will certainly lead to good results.

B) Translate into English:

أ- تعمل الحكومات على توفير الرعاية الصحية للناس لأن ذلك يؤدى إلى زيادة الإنتاج وتنمية الاقتصاد.
 أ- عملت منظمة الصحة العالمية لعقود على توفير التطعيمات اللازمة للقضاء على كثير من الأمراض.
 أ- بجب على الطالب أن يلتحق بالكلية التي تناسب قدراته ومواهبه وليست التي تعتمد فقط على الدرجات التي حصل عليها.

أَ تَمثُلُ مُؤتمُّرات الشباب فرصة جيدة لالتقاء الشباب بالمسئولين والبحث عن حلول للمشكلات التي تواجههم. أحماية الآثار مسئولية كل مواطن في مصر وليست مهمة تقوم بها الحكومة وموظفو الآثار فقط. أيسي الكثيرون استخدام الحرية فالحرية أن تعبر عن رأيك ولا تهمل آراء الاخرين.

Enrich your Vocabulary

Enrich	مزايا
cons معبت/ معلك معبت/ معلك honour misleading misuse monuments	pros prospects responsibility suit threaten vaccines vaccines التطعيمات vaccines
افریسة prey	منظمة الصحة العالمية



3 Based on Unit 11

لمزيد من الامتحانات على هنه الوحدة ادخل عل

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- is a disease in which there is too much sugar in the blood. b) Arthritis
 - a) Amnesia

c) Diabetes

- d) Insomnia
- After the operation, you any sport for a while.
 - a) won't be doing

b) may do

c) will do

- d) will be doing
- As the Second World War, more and more countries became involved.
 - a) stopped

b) ended

c) progressed

- d) flooded
- Next Friday, the President and the people the great victory over the enemy.

a) shall celebrate

b) will be celebrating

c) celebrates

- d) may be celebrated
- We have a lot of work to do, but Fatema us.

a) will be helping

b) helping

c) helped

d) may be helped

6 After twenty year	rs abroad, the street wh	nere I was born is nov	v to me.
a) recognise		b) recognition	
c) recognised		d) unrecognisable	le
7 The employers	the strikers ag	ain tomorrow. This h	as been arranged.
a) will meet		b) meet	
c) are meeting		d) are going to n	neet
8 Our science teach	ner told us that nitric ac	cid can dissolve most	animal
a) issues	b) tissues	c) layers	d) leather
9 I won't have time			the school timetable
for next year.			
a) will organise		b) will be organis	sing
c) may organise		d) organise	
10 The shop assistar	nt told me that long skin	rts are still on	this winter.
a) wave	b) fashion	c) flood	d) trend
III The director's lat	est movie is in the	of classic horro	r movies.
a) habit		b) custom	
c) tradition		d) action	
12 He's looking forv	vard his old s	school mates again.	
a) to see	b) to have seen	c) seeing	d) to seeing
13 I'll try my best to	spot you. What	wearing?	
a) will you have		b) will you be	
c) will you		d) were you	
14 Don't forget your	snow pants. It	by the time you ge	t to school.
a) is snowing		b) will have snow	ved
c) will snow		d) will be snowin	g
15 At noon tomorroy	v, I on a beac	ch somewhere.	
a) be relaxing		b) 'll relax	*
c) 'll have relaxed	1	d) relax	
16 Sorry, I can't com-	e to your office at 10 a.	m. I my daı	ighter to work at that time.
a) will have taken		b) will take	
c) will be taking		d) take	

gold the following passage, then answer the questions:

The weather forecast predicts what the temperature and air conditions will be in The weather to the the rear future. There is a wide variety of types of weather. The weather can be sunny of stormy. It can be warm or cool. It also can be rainy, cloudy or windy. Sometimes,

A blizzard, a thunderstorm or a hurricane may happen quickly. When we get information ahead of time, we can prepare for it. Being prepared helps us stay safe.

A meteorologist is a person whose job is to forecast the weather. There are many lools available to help the meteorologist do his job. A common tool for getting an accurate measurement of the temperature is a thermometer. A high temperature

In rainy weather, a meteorologist uses a rain gauge. A rain gauge gives numerical data about how much rain is falling outdoors. After it rains, you may be able to see a rainbow. A rainbow appears when the sun comes out and there is still rain in the air.

Wind brings us weather. It blows clouds from one place to another. It is helpful to know which direction the wind is blowing. A wind vane provides this information. Knowing the wind direction helps a meteorologist know what weather is coming.

Weather forecasts are not always right. As our knowledge about weather gets better, the forecasts become more accurate.

a) happy	er from a, b, c or d: e forthcoming blizzard, we will be
c) in danger	b) safe
The person whose :- 1 :	d) strong
a) psychologist	d) strong orecast the weather is called
(c) monologiet	D) philologist
When the sun oom	d) meteorologist
a) a rainbow	d) meteorologist I there is still rain in the air, we can see
4 Ihundarota	w) a onezaid
The other many	d) a hurricane
The other meaning of "com a) hides	es out" is
c) appears	b) disappears
11-012	d) eclipses

B) Answer the following questions:

- 21 What is a weather forecast?
- What is your favourite kind of weather? Why?
- 23 Name two weather tools and tell what they are used for.
- 24 People studying the weather must have hard and risky jobs. Give evidence.
- 25 Translate into Arabic:

If humans contributed to controlling global warming, this world would be cooler and the high temperatures we currently suffer from would decrease.

26 Translate into English:

. قدمت التكنولوجيا الحديثة لنا الكثير من المعجزات الطبية ومنها أشياء كان يظن البعض أنها خيال علمي يصعب الرصول اله.

27 Write an essay of about 180 words on the following topic:

Having a lot of money does not always bring happiness.





Keeping safe

Objectives

Listening : Listening for specific information; listening for detail

Grammar : Reported questions

Reading : Reading for specific information

Critical thinking: Being aware of everyday dangers

Functions : Persuading

Writing : Writing instructions to help prevent a fire

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

angle (n)	زاوية
blink (v) (ed) فتحها بسرعة	رود
Dright ()	يرسس/يمسس يي ري
bright (adj)	ساطع/مضيء
electrical (adj)	کهربی
electricity (n)	كهرباء
fire extinguisher (n)	طفاية حريق
flat (adj)	مستو/مسطح
height (n)	ارتفاع
majority (n)	أغلبية

major (adj)	رئسى
moist (adj)	, طب
moisture (n)	رطوبة
مام) (ed) overload (v)	يفرط في التحميل (الاستخ
permanent (adj)	دائم
point out (v) (ed)	يلفت النظر
position (n)	موقع/وضع/مكانة
simple (adj)	بسط
socket (n)	مقبس الكهرباء/ فيشة
unplug (v) (ged)	ينزع القابس

Vocabulary On Listening

action (n)	فعل/ حركة
activity (n)	نشاط
adults (n)	راشدون/بالغون
avoid (v) (ed)	يتجنب/يتفادى
back (n)	ظهر
basic (adj)	أساسى
common (adj)	شائع/ معروف
disappear (v) (ed)	يختفى

head teacher (n)	ناظر مدرسة
helpful (adj)	مفيد/ معين
last (v) (ed)	يستمر/يدوم
mainly (adv)	أساسًا
move around (v) (d)	يتنقل/يتحرك
pain (n)	ألم
period (n)	فترة من الوقت
race (n)	سباق
regular (adj)	منتظم
related (adj)	ىرتبط

rule (n) screen (n)	stretching (n)	استطالة
شاشة عرض spend (v) spent	temporary (adj)	مؤقت
يقضى الوقت يقضى الوقت	unusual (adj)	غیر عادی

Vocabulary On Reading

alarm (n)	إنذار
blanket (n)	بطانية
danger (n)	خطر
dangerous (adj)	خطير
equipment (n)	معدات
injury (n)	إصابة
involve (v) (d)	يتضمن/يشرك
personal (adj)	شخصى
personality (n)	شخصية

prevent (v) (ed)	يمنع/يقي
prevention (n)	وقاية
put out (v)	يطفئ النار
recommend (v) (ed)	يوصي بـ/ يرشح
recommendation (n)	توصية/ ترشيح
reduce (v) (d)	يقلل
suggest (v) (ed)	يقترح
suggestion (n)	اقتراح
turn off (v) (ed)	يغلق/ يطفئ (جهاز)
work out (v) (ed)	يحل/يطور/يدبر

Critical Thinking, Communication & Workbook Vocabulary

author (n)	مؤلف/ أديب	living room (n)	7 * - 11 72 5
connect (v) (ed)	يصل/يتصل	measure (v) (d)	غرفة المعيشة
connection (n)	اتصال	measurements (n)	مقاسات/ قیاسات
documentary (n)	فيلم وثائقي	member (n)	عضو / فرد
exhibition (n)	معرض	middle-aged (adj)	في منتصف العمر
extinguish (v) (ed)	يطفئ نارًا	nature (n)	الطبيعة
free (adj)	حر/غير مشغول	natural (adj)	طبيعى
instructions (n)	تعليمات	notice (n) (v) (d)	لافتة/يلاحظ
let down (v)	يخذل	persuade (v) (d)	يقنع

persuasion (n)	إقناع	sensible (adj)	مرح د د د
point (n) (v) (ed)	نقطة/يشير	teen (n)	اقل/ حكيم
repeated (adj)	مكرر	wire (n)	راهتی لک معدنی
safe (adj)	آمن		٥٠٠٠٥٢

Focus on Vocabulary

angle	زارية	• the position from which something is viewed
blink	يرمش/يغمض العين ويفتحها بسرعة	to shut and open your eyes quickly
brightness	سطوع/إضاءة	the quality of light given or reflected by an object
electrical	کهربی	using or to do with electricity
fire extinguisher	طفاية حريق	a piece of equipment used for stopping/putting out small fires
flat	مطح/مستو	describes something that is level, smooth and even
height	ارتفاع	the measurement from the bottom to the top of an object
majority	أغلية	most of the people or things in a group
moist	رطب	describes something that is slightly wet, damp or humid
overload	يزيد الحمل	put too much electricity through something

permanent	دائم	describes something that is intended to last or continue forever
point out	يلفت النظر	▶ tell someone something
position	موقع/مكانة	the location of an object
simple	بسيط	describes something that is easy to do or easy to understand
socket	مقبس الكهرباء	▶ a place in a wall where you can connect equipment to the supply of electricity
unplug	ينزع القابس	to disconnect a piece of electrical equipment by taking its plug out of a socket
T		

Expressions & Idioms

	Expression		يأخذ راحة
e-sarding to	طبقًا لـ	have a break	water and continues of beginning and the public contains
according to	على الأقل	in use	قيد الاستخدام
at least		make worse	يجعل الأمر أسوء
catch a train	يلحق بالقطار	a page court as parameter than the case of the case of	يراجع للامتحان
do well	يجيل	revise for the test	
follow advice	يتبع النصيحة	take exams	

Phrases & Prepositions

	J-III CCC C	اخال
	let down	0.29
cause of	rolated to	مربط بـ
give back	Ielator to	يتحدث إلى
good at	tall to	(conditionally product considerations - Extractional State of the constraints
good at	dish of	يفكر في
increase in	think of	
lead to	يؤدى إلى	

Words, Synonyms and Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym 4.	
brightness	مطوع/مستوى إضاءة		darkness	
flat	متر/مطح		rough	1
majority		bulk	minority	ير سي ان
moist	رطب	damp	dry	ي في
permanent	دائم	long-lasting	temporary	ر آن
simple	بسيط	plain	complicated	دوند
unplug	يتزع القابس	switch off/ disconnect	turn on/ connect/ p	logia
basic	أساسي	main		٠. بـ
personal		peculiar/ private/ individual	secondary public/ general	نتوى

Notes on Vocabulary

electrical	electric	electrician
electrical The fire was caused My father works for	by an electrical fault. a company producing elec	تجري (مرتبط بالكهوياء/ يعمل في مجال الكهوباء) مدنده
All the rooms in this	youth hostel have an electing electing electing injured by an electric shock	ئىرى (يعمل أو يتنج بالكهرباء) tric heater.
electrician	ctrician to repair the washi	ضا ق کی اے

moist	humid	
moist You should water	the plants regularly to keep the soil	افسيا ميثل بالنعاء moist
humid The weather had b		نف العقس (ملي بيخار الماء)

load unload overload download upload

يحمل (بضائع/برامج)

The farmers were loading some vegetables into the cars.

This program takes a while to load.

unload

يفرغ حمولة

The driver unloaded some boxes from the back of the truck.

overload

يفرط في التحميل (الاستخدام)

Be careful not to overload the washing machine.

The bus was overloaded with tourists and their luggage.

يحمِّل ملفات من الإنترنت

There are some games that can be downloaded free from the internet.

upload

يرفع إلى الإنترنت

It might take 10 minutes to upload this video to the website.

suggest

suggest

verb + ing المصدر + should + فاعل المصدر + فاعل

يقترح

He suggested going to the countryside to spend the weekend.

I suggest we should take a break and finish this later.

I suggest that he wait for us near the cinema.

لاحظ استخدام الفعل في المصدر في الغالب حتى إذا كان الفاعل مفردًا غائبًا (he - she).

Phrasal verbs with (come)

عند إضافة حروف الجر إلى بعض الأفعال يتغير معناها وتعطى معاني مختلفة عن الفعل الأصلي ومن هذه الأفعال:

come up with	يتوصل إلى ايبتكر فكرة	come out	يصدر (كتاب/ جريدة / فيلم)
come on	أسرع/ هيا	come round	يعود إلى وعيه

Omar came up with a good suggestion for what to get Nabil as a birthday present.

A new novel I want to read comes out next week.

The best authors are always very good at coming up with new ideas.

Do you know when the new James Bond film is coming out?

Mona came round slowly after the accident, but she's fine now.

My brother has come up with some useful suggestions to help me revise for my exams.

Come on! We're going to be late.

Come on! You must lend me the money I need.

sensible

sensitive

sensible

The teacher's advice about revising regularly is very sensible. sensitive

sensible. مان (سريع التأثر/ متفهم لمشاعر الآخرين)

My sister is very sensitive about her weight.

Check Point 1

a) sensible

My experience made me very sensitive to the suffering of others.

early 300 pounds.
b) electric
d) electrician
revising a week before the exam.
b) to start
d) starting
from the company's website.
b) overloaded
d) downloaded

c) sensitive d) sensational S Cairo is usually very hot and in the summer.

a) moist b) humid c) wet d) warm

6 You might feel a little sick when you come from the anaesthetic.

b) sensing

a) in b) out c) up d) round

How long will it take to this sand onto the lorry? a) load b) overload c) download d) upload

8 You'll need a qualified to rewire your house.

a) electronic b) electric c) electrical d) electrician



Listening Text ()

Good morning. I want to thank your head teacher for inviting me to speak to you today about using computers inviting amaging your health. So, I'm here to answer all the without damaging your have sent me over that questions that you have sent me over the last week.

We all need computers, don't we? When your head asked me to come here. I wanted to know where the school was.

10 looked on my computer to find it. We all use computers as part of So. I lose computers as part of our everyday life, at home, at school and at work. Computers are great, but it's important to use them in the right way, and that is what I want to talk about today.

موقع/مكانة (2)

Many of you asked me how long people spent on a computer each day. Many or your adults and children to be on their computers for (4) زاریة (4) الاقال المالات ال Well. It is a seven hours every day, and this increase in computer use has brought with it problems related to different parts of our bodies: mainly our eyes, (5)

يرمش (6)

backs and arms. One of you said that you had pain in your arms after using a computer. You asked me how long the pain would last. Most of the pain we feel after using our computers are temporary and disappear after a rest or a change of activity.

The most common computer-related problems are headaches and pain in our arms, back and neck. The most serious of these is repetitive strain injury, or RSI, which can lead to permanent damage. Another student wanted to know why he was getting RSI. Problems like this are usually caused by sitting in an unnatural position⁽²⁾ for long periods of time or having your chair in the wrong position. Perhaps the most important way of preventing these problems is to take regular breaks from your computer: at least five minutes every hour. During these breaks, you should move around or do stretching exercises. You should also make sure your desk or table is the right height(3) and the computer screen at the correct angle⁽⁴⁾. You will also find it helpful to have your feet flat⁽⁵⁾ on the floor.

Some of you asked me what you could do to prevent damage to your eyes. If you are a regular computer user, you should have your eyes tested once every two years. To avoid eye problems while you are working, blink (6) regularly and focus on things which are further away than the computer screen. Other actions that you can take include keeping the air in the room moist⁽⁷⁾, for example by using plants or (7) a glass of water. This will stop your eyes from becoming dry. Also change the brighmess of your screen from time to time and, of course, keep your screen clean.

These are some of the basic rules for avoiding health problems related to compute the serious problems. use. Follow these and you should not experience serious problems.



Safety at home

One of the most common causes of personal injury is an accident at home, and the two groups most in danger from these injuries are children under five and adults over seventy.

Recently, a group of people were asked where most accidents took place at home. The majority(1) correctly said the kitchen, because this is where most house fires begin. The bathroom is also a danger area, because this

is where many older people fall and where some accidents involving electrical(2) equipment happen.

When we asked a safety expert what we could do to prevent accidents at home, he came up with some simple (3) but useful ideas. He pointed out (4), for example, that we should not leave food cooking in the kitchen. He also recommended a number of other simple things we could do, including turning off and unplugging(5) electrical equipment when it was not in use, and not overloading (6) electrical sockets⁽⁷⁾. He also said that all homes should have smoke alarms.

Finally, we asked him what we should do if a fire started at home. He suggested that all homes should have at least one fire extinguisher (8) and that families should work out a fire escape plan in case the worst طفایة حرین (8) happened. He also reminded us that throwing water on a fire, for example, on a fire caused by electrical equipment, does not always put

it out and can make the situation worse. In these cases, a fire blanket is recommended.

If everyone follows this simple advice, the number of serious injuries caused by accidents at home can be reduced.

أغلية (1)

کهربی (2)

ينزع القابس (5)

N	otes
---	------

a) weight

on some sentences from (Listening & Reading) texts

1			
I want to thank	your head teacher for	r inviting me to speak	to you today about using
computers with	out damaging your he	alth,	,,
	تخذام اسم أو ضمير.	بعد حروف الجركما يمكن اسا	- لاحظ استخدام (verb + ing)
2 you hav	e sent me over the las		
			- يستخدم زمن المضارع التام مع ()
	e up with some simple		, , ,
	,		- لاحظ استخدام (but) كحرف -
familie	s should work out a fir	بر ویش ده رید. e escape plan in case th	
عاله) ويتبعها اسم او	(III case (II) فتعتاها (في	صبا ك ويتبعها جمله كامله اما	– تستخدم (in case) بمعنی (تہ (verb + ing)
throwir	ig water on a fire, for e	xample, on a fire caused	I by electrical equipment,
does not always	s put it out.		
.(does no	لمفرد لذلك استخدم الفعل (١١	ve) كفاعل فإنه يعامل معاملة ال	- عند استخدام صيغة (rb + ing
	Vocabula	ry Ex ercises	******
Chasse the gorroot	answer from a, b, c		
			aces that join each other,
		wo straight lines or surr	aces that join each other.
measured in degr		c) degree	d) angel
a) direction			
		lings withro	
a) deep	b) muddy	c) flat	d) cloudy
The accident has	caused the woman	damage to he	r eyesight. She won't be
able to see again.			
a) permanent	b) temporary	c) extinct	d) weak
My father asked	me to adjust the	of the TV as it look	ks a bit dark.
a) thickness	b) brightness	c) cleanliness	d) slowness
You should make	sure the soil is	before planting the	seeds.
a) rainy	b) humid	c) watery	d) moist
Our saignes to al		ers can grow to a	

c) post

b) height

d) length

T difficult to d	etermine the	of the plane which	fell in the Ocean
It was difficult to d	b) direction	c) popularity	d) astour is
a) position	our car and its strong ca	r flashlight made me	Latounding
The second secon		ol blink	-11
a) blind	b) blank place in a wall where y.	you can connect eld	ectrical -
A is the	place in a Wall Where	you can connect on	equipment la
a) socket	b) pocket	c) rocket	d) switch
The assistant at the	gallery pointed	that not one of th	lese paintings is original
a) out	10) up		d) down
You should always	the TV befo	re you go to bed.	
a) close	b) turn on	c) unplug	d) switch on
I think that modern	mobile phones are very	to use. Even	children use themes
a) complex	b) simple	c) complicated	d) tricky
It's very dangerous	to this socke	et as its wires are not	strong.
a) overload	b) unload	c) upload	d) download
	tudents in the cooking c		
	b) priority		
	container with water or		
	b) fire extinguisher		
	wo hours to come		
a) on		c) up with	
	m, my brother came		
a) on	b) out	c) up with	d) round
	of becoming an		
a) electrical		c) electronic	d) electron
The second season	of my favourite TV sho		
a) on	b) out	c) up with	d) round
	ht to young children to .		
a) keep	b) have	c) avoid	d) suffer
	y talk by giving the		-/
a) fictional	b) extra	c) additional	d) basic
	for the whole m		u, ousie
a) listed	b) lasted	c) stayed	d) faded
1000		-, stafed	u) Iduou

office workers car	n suffer from repetitive	strain becaus	se of the uncomfortable
positions.			
a) accident	b) injury	c) damage	d) disease
It's easy to change	e the text on computer	before printi	ng it.
a) screen	b) mouse	c) keyboard	d) software
If you are an offic	e worker, you must kee	ep doing exe	rcises.
a) scratching	b) attaching	c) extinguishing	d) stretching
I've got a	office job, only for	the summer holiday.	
a) permanent	b) stable	c) temporary	d) offensive
All the	of the new factory has	s been carefully tested.	
a) tools	b) equipment	c) sets	d) gadgets
Running your ow	n business usually	working long ho	urs.
a) involves	b) consists	c) rewards	d) punishes
The new factory i	near the river	pollution in the area w	vorse.
a) improves	b) puts	c) makes	d) proves
A fire or smoke	is necessary i	n any modern building	or house.
a) disarm	b) army	c) arm	d) alarm
It took firefighters	s three hours to	the fire out.	
a) give	b) cut	c) put	d) make
The report	different ways in v	which the service could	be improved.
a) suggested	b) advised	c) excluded	d) prevented
The Nile TV Cha	nnel made a new	about the New Eg	yptian Museum.
a) adventure	b) documentary	c) fiction	d) audio
Mr Kareem will r	remain the director of the	he company for three ye	ears at
a) least	b) last	c) list	d) lessen
The man in charg	e asked us to	all cigarettes in lifts.	
a) entertain	b) end	c) start	d) extinguish
We should	the wall before we	buy new shelves.	
a) design	b) afford	c) measure	d) destroy
My grandfather s	uffers from memory lo	ss related his	age.
a) in	b) to	c) about	d) at
The secretary was	s asked to put up a	about the meetin	g of the staff.
a) notice	b) dictionary	c) dialogue	d) device
			-

d) socket

The father's beh	aviour proves that he hogy.	nas an opposing	against the misuse of
a) scene	b) position	c) sight	d) site
January is the	of the tourist s	season in Sharm El-She	eikh.
a) weight	b) length	c) height	d) altitude
Most parents are	strongly the	e new educational syste	em.
a) growing	b) backing	e) packing	d) harvesting
Il don't want to	you, but I car	i't find the car key.	
a) warn	b) oppose	c) object	d) alarm
People today suf	fer from information	of all the mas	ss media around them.
a) upload	b) overload	c) download	d) unload
m The word "damp	o" is similar in meaning	to the word	
a) moist	b) dry	c) stormy	d) wasting

Grammar

Reported Speech	الكلام غير المباشر

Reported Questions

الأسئلة غير المباشرة

عند تحويل السؤال من الكلام المباشر إلى غير المباشر نتبع الخطوات التالية:

١ - يحول فعل القول كالآتي :

Direct	Indirect	Indirect
say/say to	ask	هناك أفعال أخرى غير ask/asked منها:
says/says to	asks	wanted to know/inquired/didn't know/had no idea/ wondered (لا يتبعها مفعول)
said/said to	asked	Can (Could) you tell me?

٢- تحذف علامتا التنصيص وتربط الجملة بنفس كلمة الاستفهام إذا كان هناك wh- word أو if/whether إذا كان السؤال يبدأ بفعل مساعد أو if/whether السؤال يبدأ بفعل مساعد أو ناقص مثل (have – has – is – can – will, etc.).

٣- ويحول السؤال بعد الربط إلى جملة خبرية أي أن الفاعل يسبق الفعل ولا يكون هناك فعل مساعد بعد أداة الربط.

٤- تستبدل علامة الاستفهام بنقطة.

٥ - تحول الضمائر حسب المعنى.

٦- تحول الأزمنة والظروف وضمائر الإشارة كما سبق في الجملة الخبرية. (راجع الوحدة ٩).

• I said to him, "What do you think of my new suit?"

(Ding)

ask/want to know +				باقى الجملة	(.)
I asked him	what	he	thought	of my new suit	

(Indirec

ask/asked يمكن أن يأتي مفعول أو لا يأتي ولكن بعد want (ed) to know والكلمات الباقية لا يأتي مفعول.

Direct : She said to him, "What's your favourite food?"

Indirect: She asked him what his favourite food was.

: She said to me, "What do you want?" Direct

Indirect: She asked me what I wanted.

: They said to her, "Do you know Ashraf?" Indirect: They asked her if/whether she knew Ashraf.

Check Point

Choose the correct	answer from a, b, c o	r d:	
He wanted to kno	ow whether h	im.	
a) shall I help	b) can I help	c) I could help	d) I am l l
He asked me wha	at time	c) reduid help	d) I can help
a) is it	b) it is	c) it has been	J) 5
3 She asked me wh	y Iher the tr	ith the day before	,
a) didii t tell	b) hadn't told	c) woon!+ +-11!	AN 1
- I Could	a willy lie 10 spe	end the cummon Lata	
,	waiiis	C) has monted	in Matrouh.
5 I her if	I could use her new car	nera	d) does he wan
a) wondered	b) told	a) calcal	N. 1
My boss wanted to	o know what secondary	school I to wh	d) inquired
a) would go	b) have gone	c) had gone	ien I was a student
They asked my si	ster if she	c) had gone perience working with c	d) can go
a) has had	b) could have	belience working with c	hildren.
I inquired if Ali	any sports	c) has	d) had
a) played	h) playe		
asked him what	his favourite fil-	c) is playing	d) will play
a) will be	b) was	*********	
walled to kno	W how land	c) is	d) was being
a) takes	h) has tale	c) is me to go to the marke c) took	et.
A CONTRACT DESCRIPTION OF THE PROPERTY OF THE PROPERTY OF THE PROPERTY OF	o) nas taken	c) took	d) will take

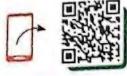
Extra Points

• إذا بدأ السؤال المحول بـ I wonder/I ask/I want to know/I inquire فلا نحول الأزمنة بعد الربط للدرجة الأقل.

I ask/I wonder why he walked to school yesterday and left his car.

- ◘ إذا بدأ السؤال المحول بـ Can/Could you tell me فهو مضارع ونضع علامة استفهام آخر السؤال المحول فلا تحول الزمن إلى الدرجة الأقل عند الربط.
- · Can/Could you tell me what your name is?
- · Do you know where the post office is?
 - يجب ملاحظة أن الحقائق والأسئلة المقولة حالًا لا يحول الزمن بعدها إلى الدرجة الأقل.
- · He asked just now if I speak English fluently.
- € لاحظ الاستفهام بعد جملة خبرية مثل:
- · He said, "I have finished my homework. Have you finished yours?"
- He said that he had finished his homework and asked if I had finished mine.
- ♦ يمكن وضع to + inf. عندما يكون الفاعل قبل فعل القول هو نفس الفاعل الفول هو نفس الفاعل الذى قبل الفعل المصدر داخل علامتي التنصيص.
- · He asked me, "Where can I put it?"
- He asked me where he could put it. Or He asked me where to put it.
- ◘ إذا وجد or not آخر الجملة فيمكن استخدام if/whether أما إذا وجد or not في وسلط الجملة فنستخدم whether فقط.
- I wanted to know if/whether the teacher had given us a lot of homework or not.
- · I wanted to know whether or not the teacher had given us a lot of homework.





لتجنب بعض الأخطاء الشائعة ادخل على

Grammar Exercises

Choose the correct an	iswer from a, b, c or a:		
He asked me where	he the vase.		
		e) can put	d) does put
Farouk asked Osma			
a) was he	b) is he	c) he was	d) are you
The teacher said, "V	Vhere, Hazem?'	,	
a) your books are	b) your books were	e) your book is	d) is your book
Karim Nour	if there was sugar in th	e cup.	
a) asked	b) inquired	c) wondered	d) told
Samy asked Ali who	ere that precious	s stone.	
a) did he find	b) he had found	c) he finds	d) had he found
6 They wanted to kno	w music.		
a) did I play	b) do I play	c) that I play	d) if I played
7 She asked me when	e I then.		
a) am staying	b) was staying	c) did stay	d) stay
The boss asked me	if I willing to st	ay after the limited v	vorking hours.
a) will be	b) would be	c) am	d) could be
9 The interviewer asl	ked the professor	. he had worked at a	ny foreign universities.
a) that	b) whatever	c) whether	d) unless
10 Can you kindly tell	me where at pro	esent time?	
a) was the manage	r	b) will the manage	er be
c) is the manager		d) the manager is	
II Alladin asked the r	nagician he had	done to deserve so se	evere punishment.
a) what	b) whether	c) that	d) if
P He asked me if I	that problem.		
a) can solve	b) will solve	c) could solve	d) has solved
He when s	he had intended to buy a	car of her own.	
a) told	b) asks	c) said	d) inquired



I asked her	d) that half of the accused.
The judge finally asked whether I anything to say on below have b) was having e) had	half of the accused.
b) was having c) had	11 11 1
	d) will have
The little girl asked which way she	
should go b) will go c) has gone	d) may go
t wonder what I this time next week.	
b) would be doing c) had done	d) did
He wanted to know how old I on my next birthday.	
will be b) can be c) would be	d) could be
a) with be a sked the tourists if they their visit to Egypt.	
had been enjoying b) would enjoy c) enjoy	d) had enjoyed
My teacher asked me if I computer games.	
b) likes c) will like	d) was liking
Tracked him what he the day before.	I) has been doing
a) did b) is doing c) had been doing	d) has been doing
Ali when	
b) his ontirely	
u) his officery	been.
me if I could come nere.	d) inquired
1010	
Riham asked Hanaa who she Hivne to hel	d) can
b) should	,
Warda wanted to know if Randa Mona's best friend.	d) was being
1) 10	
Deem's mother asked her when nome from the stop-	d) would she be
b) she would be	
Warda asked Sara if the bus to school.	d) she took
b) che Will lake	
Tarek wanted to know who Mazin football with. (c) had been playing	d) can play
a) has been playing b) is playing c) had been playing at s	school that day.
Zeinab's parents wanted to know what their daughter	d) can do
a) has done b) is doing	A/

Nasser wanted to know	where Khaled	his holiday.	
a) had spent b	has spent	c) is spending) can spend
Hamid's mother asked l	nim what he	hat evening.	Spelld
a) is doing b	has done	c) will do	was doing
Soha asked her mother		to do the shopping.	- doing
a) wants b) is wanting
Samy wanted to know h		in the class.	minus
a) are there			d) there were
My wife wondered whe			TICLE WATER
a) take	b) can take	c) would take	d) will
I asked the chemistry tea	acher why he	the liquids.	WIII take
a) is mixing	b) was mixing	c) has been mixing	d) mixes
He asked me where I	my holiday the	vear before.	
a) had spent	b) did spend	c) spent	d) have -
Manar asked	me what at t	he weekend.	
a) did I do	b) had I done	c) I had done	d) have I de
Ine students asked the t	eacher what they	to help stop global	Warmino
a) do	b) had done	c) did	d) could do
My friend asked me	the new film.		
a) whether have I seen	b) if had I seen	c) whether I had see	n d) if had seen t
Mahmoud's mother ask	ed him where	three hours before.	
a) he had been			d) he was
The manager asked the			
a) he had called	b) had called	c) he called	d) calls
Do you know what	•		
a) does this word mean	?	b) this word means?	
c) this word means.		d) this word meant?	
The teacher asked us he	ow many countries	in Africa.	
a) there were	b) there would be		d) are there
He asked her if she cou	ld help him, but she	************	
a) said "No"	b) wondered	c) said "Yes"	d) refused
He wondered whether			
a) should he invite	b) he shall invite	c) to invite	d) he will inviz

she asked me wi	nat I to know the	n,	
a) was wanting	b) wanted	c) had been wantin	g d) would want
Could you tell m	e what time the concert.	this evening?	6. a)
a) would started	b) started	c) will start	d) could start
Ramy asked him	self where hehis	car keys.	o, 00010.0001
a) would put	b) put	c) puts	d) had put
I don't know wh	o the Eiffel Towe	er.	-, F
a) built	b) builds	c) had built	d) would build
	he had enough money		-,
a) whether	b) if	c) that	d) what
	pen General E	Xercises (Gramm	nar)
	answer from a, b, c or		
You driv	ve carefully. The roads ar	e wet.	
a) had rather	b) would rather	c) had better	d) would better
He looks	Maybe something wro	ong has happened to him.	-, out a dettor
a) to be sadly		c) sadly	d) sadness
We donated some	e money to a charity that	helps homeless.	a) sucrices
a) A	b) an	c) no article	d) the
Ithat file	m four times already.		a) the
a) see	b) have seen	c) have been seeing	d) saw
I come to	o the cinema yesterday b	ecause I had so much hor	mework to do
a) shouldil [b) mustn't	c) couldn't	d) may not
6 Bill read an intere	esting of news in	the paper.	d) may not
a) biece	b) slice	a) packet	d) block
I'd rather he	me to my face rather	than behind my back	d) block
	Di has criticicad	a) au-t	d) oritial and
A: Would you like	e to have cake or ice cres	am? B: you wan	d) criticised
a) Something	b) Whatever	c) Everything	d) However
Maha to	the shop to get some bre	ad She should be book or	d) However
a) has been	b) was gone	c) Everything ad. She should be back so	oon.
Would have been	b) was gone n better if youh	c) has gone	d) was
a) had told	b) told	o) on tall'	N - 11
	b) told	c) are telling	d) tell

Communication

Skills

ما المعادات بالنفصيل برجى الرجوع إلى ملحق السراجعة.

Language Functions

Persuading someone

إفناع شخص ما

- Surely the most sensible thing would be for just one of us to look.
- I really think you'd be better at looking than me.
- · Go on, Hazem.
- · Just this once, please!
- · You're not going to let me down, are you?
- · Come on! It's a great film, you'll love it.

Writing

A notice that could be put on the wall of a kitchen to remind people of the dangers of fire

Remember

- Many kitchen fires happen when people are not paying attention or they leave things cooking
- The kitchen is a dangerous place for children, so they shouldn't be left alone there,
- Keep the oven and cooker clean built-up fat and bits of food can start a fire.

Dealing with a fire

- IF a pan catches fire in your kitchen, don't move it because it will be very hot.
- TURN off the heat if it's safe to do so don't lean over the pan to reach the controls.
- DON'T use a fire extinguisher on a pan of oil because the force of the extinguisher can spread the fire.
- NEVER use water on chip pan fires as this will cause a fireball, get everyone out and close the kitchen door.
- IF an electrical appliance catches fire, don't throw water on it.
- IF it is safe to do so, you may be able to put out the fire immediately by:
 - pulling the appliance's plug out
 - switching off the power at the fuse box
- IF the fire doesn't go out, get out of the house, stay out and call the fire department.

Skills EXercises

Write an essay of about (150) words on one of the following:

- How we can make schools a safe place for students.
- The role of women in developing societies.

2 A) Translate into Arabie:

- 1. Traffic police insist that all cars should have a valid fire extinguisher to have a license. It is an important rule that ensures safety.
- 2. Tolerance is the willingness to accept behaviour and beliefs that are different from your own. Thus, we all can share peace and mutual understanding.

3. Egypt will never forget its sons who work hard to build it or those who devote their lives to it. Their efforts offer us comfort and prosperity.

 Rules and laws are made to govern people's social behaviour. They also aim at reducing harms and disorders.

5. Egypt is famous for its ancient monuments that attract millions of tourists. Thus, we should make good use of them to develop this important industry.

6. The Project of the New Capital is a massive project which will move Egypt to new horizons. It also created a great number of jobs.

B) Translate into English:

١- يتعرض الناس في مصر للحوادث بسبب إهمالهم لقواعد السلامة التي وضعت لحمايتهم من الحوادث.

٢- الزيادة السكانية أحد أهم معوقات التنمية والتقدم في كثير من بلاد العالم وخاصة الدول النامية.

 ٣- تتطلع شعوب العالم إلى السلام والاستقرار اللذين تهددهما النزاعات التي تسود أجزاء كثيرة من العالم وأهمها منطقة الشرق الأوسط.

٤- كل عام يفقد الملايين من الناس أرواحهم أثناء محاولاتهم عبور البحر المتوسط للهجرة إلى أوروبا آملين في حياة أفضل.

٥- يختلف احتفال الناس بالمناسبات المختلفة باختلاف ثقافتهم وعاداتهم وطرق تفكيرهم.

٦- يجب أن تقوم المؤسسات الكبرى بالاستثمار في البحث العلمي لمساعدة الحكومة على تطويره واستفادة المجتمع من نتائجه.

Enrich your Vocabulary

culture	ثقافة	investment	الاستثمار
developing countries	الدول النامية	mutual	متبادل
devote	یکرس	obstacles	معوقات
disputes	النزاعات	occasions	مناسبات
ensure	يضمن	over population	الزيادة السكانية
horizons	آفاق	tolerance	التسامح
immigration	الهجرة	valid	صألح
industry	الصناعة	willingness	الاستعداد
Institutions	المؤسسات)



Test 4 Based on Unit 12

لمزيد من الامتحانات على هذه الوحدة ادخل على

Choose th	ie correct	answer	from	a, b.	C	or d:
-----------	------------	--------	------	-------	---	-------

We use a	for stopping small fir	res. So, it is necessar	y in a kitchen.
a) heater	b) fire extinguisher	c) fridge	d) conditioner
Mohammed aske	ed if he Tamer	's pen.	
a) can borrow	b) has borrowed	c) borrowed	d) could borrow
Experts advise e	very computer user to h	ave his/her feet	on the fla-
a) mgn	b) muddy	c) flat	d) alouds
Mindelli (elevisio	on can automatically adi	ust the of	the comes
a) brightness	b) thickness	c) cleanliness	ما المالية
a man wante	to know what I	of the new film	
a) mought	b) think	c) was thinking	451
ora beobie can 2	unci back be	cause of any wrong	nonitie-
a) mjury	b) accident	c) damage	position.
Mum asked who	some more y	Oghurt ice creem	d) disease
a) wanted	b) wants	c) has wanted	**
The boss asked t	he workers if they	enough time t	d) was wanting
a) have	b) have had	c) were begin time to	finish their work.
Osama wants to	know if Ahmed	the next	d) had had
a) was going to	be b) is going to be	the next group les	ader.
When I told her	about the new price of	the now L'I	d) has been
a) shout	h) blink	me new mobile, she	didn't even
Michael became	b) blink	c) nurry	d) cry
a) childhood	a partner in the family	company on reaching	ig the age of
I'm really unluc		c) majority	d) minority
a) isn't I	b) don't I		
The man	b) don't I me what time it was	c) doesn't I?	d) aren't I
a) said			
	b) told	c) asked to	d) wondered
a ne wondered	to invite Karee	m to the party or not	
a) where	b) if	c) how	d) whether
	"What can I do?"		
a) he	b) himself	c) his	d) she
She asked him i	f heanother j	piece of cake and he	accepted
a) would like	b) likes	c) liked	
1160			d) was liking

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Imagine how life could be on earth without modern technology. Imagine how you could do your daily life routine without home appliances and the internet. Some people argue that it is a double-edged weapon.

In today's modern society, the internet is a very educational and productive tool. In order to become knowledgeable and stay well connected. Without technology some individuals couldn't function throughout their day. Many people use it for business purposes while others use technology in order to communicate on social networking sites such as Twitter or Facebook. Despite the beneficial users, predators often abuse its powers. This tool puts consumers at risk for identity theft through scamming and even backing.

Cyber-crime is any illegal activity committed on the internet that uses a computer as its primary means of theft. Through identity theft, a predator without someone's knowledge acquires data and uses it to commit fraud. It is often difficult to catch cyber criminals because the internet makes it easier for people to do things from any location on the globe. Predators use methods such as spam advertisements and even phony programmes that have viruses.

A) Choose	the	correct	answer	from	a b		or	d.
ALCHOUSE	LIIC	CONTRACT	amont	TT ANTTH	41, 17	, .	171	11.

- The main idea of the passage is
 - a) the internet is a very educational and productive tool
 - b) the internet and cyber-crimes
 - c) the internet "Advantages and disadvantages"
 - d) the internet as a means of communication
- According to the passage, people use the internet for
 - a) business

- b) communication
- c) scamming and hacking
- d) all of these
- The underlined word "predators" means
 - a) hackers

b) hatchers

c) customers

- d) traders
- The best sentence that summarises the passage is
 - a) Spam advertisements and phony programmes are useful
 - b) Don't use the internet ever again
 - c) We can't protect ourselves from cyber criminals
 - d) We can't do without the internet but we should be careful when using it

B) Answer the following questions:

- Technology isn't going to stand still. Give two reasons.
- Mention two ways to show how we could protect our data from predators.
- Me How can we overcome the abuse of the internet?
- Me How can you imagine your life without the internet?

Translate into Arabic:

Young people should appreciate their elders' sensible advice and consult. They are the outcome of their experience in life.

Translate into English:

. تؤدي النزاعات والحروب إلى آثار نفسية كثيرة على الأطفال من أهمها فقدان الشعور بالأمان والخوف الدائم من

Write an e-mail of about 180 words:

To your friend Salim telling him about your new school in United Arab Emirates and about making new friends when you moved there with your family. Your name is Adel





Rider Haggard: King Solomon's Mines

Objectives

Listening for gist and for detail; guessing the meanings of

Listening unknown words

Grammar : Prepositions after nouns, verbs and adjectives

Reading : Reading to check what you know and for specific information

Critical thinking: Understanding why people's home countries are important

to them

Functions : Asking for and agreeing to help people

Writing: Writing an email asking for help

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

140)	
adviser (n)	مستشار/ ناصح
advice (n)	نصيحة
advisable (adj)	من المفضل(المنصوح)
almost (adv)	تقريبًا
army (n)	جيش
battle (n)	معركة
bestseller (n)	الأكثر مبيعا
eventually (adv)	في النهاية
force (n) (v) (d)	قوة/يجبر
fortunately (adv)	لحسن الحظ
fortunate (adj)	محظوظ
go missing (v)	يضل الطريق

go on (v)	
keen on (adj)	بەر يېس على
oasis (n)	
oases (n)	اما امات
oppose (v) (d)	يارض
opposing (adj)	يارض
opposition (n)	عارضة
reform (n) (v) (ed)	ملاح/يصلح
strange (adj)	غرب
trap (v) (ped)	بنجز
trapped (adj)	<i>پ</i> ئىمتىجز

Vocabulary on Listening

adventure (n)	مغامرة
agriculture (n)	الزراعة
alive (adj)	على قيد الحياة
ancient (adj)	قديم
apply for (v) (y ied)	يتقدم ك
civilisation (n)	حضارة
diamond (n)	ماس
explorer (n)	مستكشف

explore (v) (d)	بنكشف
exploration (n)	النكشاف
government (n)	حكومة
lawyer (n)	محام
mine (n)	ننجم
poet (n)	شاعر
poetry (n)	مِبغو
poem (n)	لَصِيلة
queen (n)	ىلكة
take place (v)	يعدن

Vocabulary on Reading

adventurer (n)	مغامر
attack (n) (v) (ed)	هجوم/يهاجم
behave (v) (d)	يتصرف/يسلك
behaviour (n)	سلوك/تصرف
capture (v) (d)	يأسر/يستولي على
criminal (n) (adj)	مجرم/ إجرامي
cruel (adj)	قاس
escape (v) (d)	يهرب
frightened (adj)	مرعوب

hunter (n)	صياد
hunting (n)	الصيد
powerful (adj)	قوی/ ذو نفوذ
servant (n)	خادم
soldier (n)	جندی
thirst (n)	العطش
treasure (n)	کنز
valley (n)	وادٍ
violent (adj)	عنيف
violence (n)	عنف

Critical Thinking, Communication & Workbook Vocabulary

48	خیری	organisation (n)	مؤسسة/منظمة
charitable (adj)	0,5-	popularity (n)	شهرة/ شعبية
collect (v) (ed)		Designation of the second seco	موقع/ مكانة
developed (adj)	متطور	position (n)	علاقة
economy (n)	اقتصاد	relationship (n)	بفتر ف
educational (adj)	تعلیمی	suppose (v) (d)	نظام
effective (adj)	فعال	system (n)	رهام
fair (adj)	عادل	tolerant (adj)	سامع
gift (n)	هدية	tolerance (n)	سامح
musician (n)	موسيقار	wonder (v) (ed)	بتساءل

Focus on Vocabulary

adviser	مستشار	someone whose job is to give advice about a subject
almost	تقريبًا	▶ nearly but not completely
army	جيش	a large organisation of soldiers
battle	معركة	▶ a violent fight between two groups
bestseller	الأكثر مبيعًا	a book that sells in large numbers
eventually	أخيرًا/ في النهاية	▶ after a long time
explorer	مستكشف	▶ someone who travels to places that people have not visited before
force	قوة	▶ a natural power
fortunately	لحسن الحظ	describes something happening that it is good
go missing	يضل الطريق	▶ (become) lost
go on (doing something)	يستمر	▶ continue
keen on	حريص على	▶ be enthusiastic about
oasis	واحة	▶ a place in the desert where there is water and plans grow
oppose	يعارض	▶ disagree with something and try to stop it
poet	شاعر	someone who writes poems

reform	إصلاح	a change to how we do things to make it fairer or more effective
strange	غريب	▶ unusual, surprising or difficult to understand
trap	يحتجز/يحبس	▶ catch someone or something

Exp	ressions	(&)	Idioms
		(

across the desert	عبر الصحراء
around the world	حول العالم
as soon as possible	بأسرع ما يمكن
ask for help	يطلب مساعدة
at the same time	في نفس الوقت
collect money for	يجمع المال من أجل
fail an exam	يرسب في امتحان
find an answer for	يجد حلا ل

give advice	يقدم نصيحة
go missing	يفقد طريقه
make a meal	يصنع وجبة
make him rich	يثريه/ يجعله غنيا
make pollution	يسبب تلوثا
miss my country	أفتقد وطني
on their way to	في طريقهم إلى
say goodbye to	يودع

Phrases @ Prepositions

answer to	حل لـ
apply for	يتقدم بطلب (وظيفة مثلا)
belong to	ينتمي إلى/ يخص
die of	يموت من (مرض مثلا)
famous for	مشهور ب
find out about	يعرف عن/يكتشف عن
good at	جيد في
good for	مفيد لـ
hear from	يتلقى أخبارا من

hear of	بسمع عن
increase in	زیادة فی
interested in	مهتم ب
keen on	متحمس ك
look for	يبحث عن
popular with	معروف/محبوب لـ
popularity of	شعبية ال
reform of	إصلاح الـ
worried about	قلق على

Words, Synonyms and Antonyms

Word	Meaning	المرادف Synonym	المضاد Antonym
almost	تقريبا	approximately	wholly
force	ً قوة	strength	weakness
keen	حريص	eager	indifferent
oppose	يعارض	defy/ object	accept
reform	إصلاح / يصلح	amend/ repair	harm/ damage
strange	غريب	weird/ unusual	common/ familiar مروف
trap	يحتجز	seize/ capture	release
alive	على قيد الحياة	conscious	dead
attack	هجوم	aggression	defence
cruel	قاس	harsh/ unkind	friendly/ merciful برد/رحيم
powerful	قوى	forceful/ strong	helpless/ weak
violent	عنيف	fierce/ wild	calm/ gentle دیا/رتیق

Notes on Vocabulary

battle	quarrel	dispute
My son had a quadispute	re wounded in the battle, but the real with some naughty boys abetween the two countries ab	ا (جزء من حرب) the army didn't lose the war. رامشاجرة at school.

explorer

inventor

discoverer

explorer

Marco Polo was the first explorer to reach China.

inventor

Thomas Edison was a great inventor in the field of electricity.

The pharaohs were the discoverers of many metals.

· . · · · · .

take (time) to + inf.

It took three weeks to fix the machines in the factory.

It took me two hours to write this report.

يستخدم هذا التعبير بمعنى (يستغرق وقتا في أداء عمل معين)

Compound Nouns

• الأسماء المركبة هي أسماء تتكون من أكثر من كلمة مثل:

police station/football/teapot

• تكتب الأسماء المركبة كلمة واحدة أو كلمتين منفصلتين، أو كلمتين منفصلتين بينهما شرطة، أو أكثر من كلمتين بينها أكثر من شرطة: bookshop/bathroom/goldmine/bus stop/water-skiing/electrical equipment/ playground/detective story/horse-riding/father-in-law

system

discipline

system

نظام (لتشغيل أو ضبط آلة أو نشاط)

A new alarm system has been installed in our office building.

discipline

نظام/ انضباط (التصرف)

Some parents complained about the school's strict discipline.

adventure

adventurous

adventurer

adventure (n)

مغامرة

Our grandfather always used to tell us about his adventures at sea.

Jurassic Parks is a series of hair-raising adventure films.

لاحظ استخدامها قبل الاسم ليعطى معنى (به مغامرة/ يعطى إحساس المغامرة)

adventurous (adj)

Mr Sherbini isn't a very adventurous cook: he makes the common recipes.

شخص مغامر

adventurer (n)

Damascus was a natural meeting point for traders and adventurers travelling from East to West.

Words, Synonyms and Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	المضاد Antonym
almost	تقريبا	approximately	wholly
force	قوة	strength	weakness سند
keen	حريص	eager	indifferent
oppose	يعارض	defy/ object	accept
reform	إصلاح / يصلح	amend/ repair	harm/ damage
strange	غريب	weird/ unusual	common/ familiar معروف
trap	يحتجز	seize/ capture	release على سراح
alive	على قيد الحياة	conscious	dead
attack	هجوم	aggression	defence
cruel	قاسِ	harsh/ unkind	friendly/ merciful روود/رحيم
powerful	قوى	forceful/ strong	helpless/ weak نبف
violent	عنيف	fierce/ wild	calm/ gentle مادئ / رقيق

Notes on Vocabulary

battle	quarrel	dispute
battle		رئة (جزء من حرب)
Many soldiers we quarrel	re wounded in the battle, but the	
My son had a quadispute	rrel with some naughty boys a	t school.
There is a dispute	between the two countries abo	out borders.

discoverer inventor explorer

Marco Polo was the first explorer to reach China.

-2:

Thomas Edison was a great inventor in the field of electricity.

The pharaohs were the discoverers of many metals.

take (time) to + inf.

It took three weeks to fix the machines in the factory.

It took me two hours to write this report.

يستخدم هذا التعبير بمعنى (يستغرق وقتا في أداء عمل معين)

Compound Nouns

• الأسماء المركبة هي أسماء تتكون من أكثر من كلمة مثل:

police station/football/teapot

• تكتب الأسماء المركبة كلمة واحدة أو كلمتين منفصلتين، أو كلمتين منفصلتين بينهما شرطة، أو أكثر من كلمتين بينها أكثر من شرطة: bookshop/bathroom/goldmine/bus stop/water-skiing/electrical equipment/ playground/detective story/horse-riding/father-in-law

system

discipline

نظام (لتشغيل أو ضبط آلة أو نشاط)

A new alarm system has been installed in our office building.

discipline

نظام/ انضباط (التصوف)

Some parents complained about the school's strict discipline.

adventure

adventurous

adventurer

adventure (n)

مغامرة

Our grandfather always used to tell us about his adventures at sea.

Jurassic Parks is a series of hair-raising adventure films.

لاحظ استخدامها قبل الاسم ليعطى معنى (به مغامرة/ يعطى إحساس المغامرة) مغامر

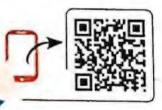
adventurous (adj)

Mr Sherbini isn't a very adventurous cook: he makes the common recipes.

Damascus was a natural meeting point for traders and adventurers travelling from East to West.

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: During the war, the soldier saw many of his friends fall in field c) disputes d) treaties b) quarrels a) battles Alfred Nobel was the of dynamite. d) designer c) discoverer b) inventor a) explorer Our maths teacher keeps good in class and the students like him. b) fight c) discipline d) cure a) system Samy is a person who has always had an spirit. a) adventure b) adventurous d) adventuring c) adventurer It took me three days my room with bright colours. a) paint b) painting c) painted d) to paint The previous manager is in with the company about his contract. a) battle b) quarrel c) dispute



a) system

a) adventure

Listening Text all))

c) discipline

c) adventurer

Mustafa: Did you know, we're going to read King Solomon's Mines at school soon?

The air-conditioning in the bank isn't working very well.

b) adventurous

S As a young man Mr Donald went off to Africa, looking for

b) process

: Yes, I heard. I'm looking forward to that. And for Hany homework we have to find out about Rider Haggard, who wrote the book

Mustafa: What do you know about him?

: Not much. I know he's not alive and I think he was English.

Mustafa: Shall we try and find out more?

Hany : OK. Let's look on the internet. There must be a Rider Haggard website.



d) war

d) adventuring

Rider Haggard: King Solomon's Mines Mustafa: Here he is. Rider Haggard, born 1856, died 1925. : So he's been dead quite a long time. What else does it say? شاعر (١) Mustafa: Well, you were right; he was English, his father was a جريص على / متحمس لـ (2) lawyer and his mother was a poet(1). متكثمون (3) : When did he start writing? Mustafa: Wait a minute. OK, it says he wasn't very good at school, حضارات (4) so he didn't apply for university. His father sent him to الأكثر منعا (5) work in South Africa. : Did he stay in South Africa? Mustafa: Yes, for a few years, then he went back to England, (6) بسترنی married and had a family. إصلاح (7) : So, when did he start writing? Mustafa: Well, let's see. He became a lawyer first, but he didn't do very well because he was so keen on (2) writing.

: What were his books about?

Mustafa: They were adventure stories which took place in Africa and were about explorers discovering ancient African civilisations 5. Sometimes the explorers were looking for diamonds.

: Was he successful as a writer?

Mustafa: Yes. King Solomon's Mines, which took him only six weeks to write, was a bestseller(5) for a year.

: What else did he write?

Mustafa: Let's see. She, about an ancient African queen, and Allan Quatermain are his best known other books.

: And did he go on on working at the same time as being a writer?

Mustafa: Yes, he worked for the British government. He helped in the reform of agriculture. He also travelled around the world.

: I'm interested in learning more about him. Hany

Mustafa: So am I, and I'm really looking forward to reading King Solomon's Mines.

Hany : Me, too.

Reading Text

King Solomon's Mines

An Englishman, Sir Henry Curtis, is in Africa looking for his brother who has gone missing while looking for King Solomon's Mines. Allan Quatermain, an adventurer and hunter who has a map of the mines, agrees to help Sir Henry look for his brother. A young African,



عا الطريق ا أ ا

فرة (الـ)

ىد كة (6)

لحن الحظ الا)

Umbopa, travels with them as their servant.

When they walk across a desert, the group almost die of thirst, but eventually reach mountains. They cross the mountains into Kukuanaland, a country in a remote valley. Soldiers from the country's army capture Sir Henry's group and are going to kill them, but suddenly become afraid when one of the Englishmen behaves strangely. Soon the Kukuanas believe that the men have strange and powerful forces.

The Englishmen are taken to King Twala, a cruel, violent man who kills anyone who opposes him. To become king, he killed his brother and sent his brother's wife and son Ignosi into the desert to die.

The servant Umbopa now tells the Englishmen that he is really Ignosi. Then, with his own soldiers and his English friends, he attacks the king's army. In the battle that follows, Twala is killed. Then, one of the old king's advisers, Gagool, takes the group to King Solomon's

Mines, where they find rooms full of gold and diamonds. While they are looking at the treasure, Gagool escapes and traps the Englishmen in the mine without food at water. Fortunately, after a few days, they manage to get out of the mine, taking enough diamonds to make them rich.

The Englishmen say goodbye to the new King Ignosi and start their journey home.

On their way, they stop at an oasis, where they find Sir Henry's brother.

on some sentences from (Listening & Reading) texts Notes

His mother was a poet.

- تفيد كلمة poct شاعر أو شاعرة مثلها مثل poct المادر teacher/doctor.

He didn't do very well because he was so keen on his writing. - تستخدم well حالًا بعد الفعل do، وتأتي keen on بمعنى شغوف أو متحمس بعدها v-ing. ويمكن وضع .to + inf مثل:

He was keen to tell me the truth.

They were adventure stories which took place in Africa and were about explorers

discovering ancient African civilisations.

- تأتي كلمة adventure مع stories بمعنى قصص المغامرات ولا نستخدم adventurous لأنها صفة للأشخاص بمعنى مغامر أو جسور على فعل شيء. أما adventurer فمعناها الشخص المغامر (دائم المغامرة) المخاطر بنفسه.

- استخدمت discovering بعد حذف who discover.

And did he go on working at the same time as being a writer?

- بعد go on نستخدم الفعل مضافا إليه ing بمعنى يستمر في نفس العمل الذي كان قبل التوقف.

After opening the door, she went on doing her homework.

أما .go on + to + inf فمعناها ينتقل إلى عمل آخر.

After doing exercise A, I went on to do exercise B.

He helped in the reform of agriculture.

- كلمــة reform تعنى إصلاح الأنظمة والمؤسســات أما repair فإصلاح الأجهــزة والمعدات مثل vehicles أما mend أو repair فتأتى مع:

mend (or repair) a roof, fence ساعة, watch ساعة, radio, camera, puncture ثقب, etc:

6 I'm interested in learning more about him. - So am I.

- بعد SO وهي بمعنى وكذلك نستخدم الفعل المساعد من جنس الفعل المساعد في الجملة التي قبلها وعلى حسب الفاعل الذي بعدها مثال:

A) I have bought a car.

B) So have I or so has Omar.

A) I bought a car.

B) So did I/he/they.

A) I can speak English.

B) So can I/he/they.

A) I speak English.

B) So do I or So does he/she.

Vocabulary Exercises

.::::::::::::::::::::::::::::::::::::::	V OGAIDUIAI)	LACICIOCO	
Choose the correct	answer from a, b, c or	d:	
M A/An i	s someone who travels t b) explorer	hrough an unknown	area to find
a) inventor	b) explorer	c) author	d) dies out about
The Ministry of E	ducation is taking great	steps toed	lucation
a) reform	b) mend	c) damage	d) door
I play lots of sport	is but I am not	on watching sports	on TV
a) interested	b) excited	c) pleased	d) kees
I A/An i	s a place in the desert w	here there are water a	nd plants
a) oasis	b) enring	a) cuburb	T)
The play stopped l	because one of the actors	s was unwell and coul	ldn't
performance.			With
a) go in	b) go up	c) go into	d) go on
I came very late be	ecause I was	in the traffic jam.	a) 80 011
a) imprisoned	b) clapped	c) trapped	d) attacked
1 lt was 1	midnight when we finall	y reached our hotel in	London
a) soon	b) almost	c) near	d) close
Kings and presider	nts hirewhose jo	b is to be consulted b	efore making decision
a) poets	b) advisers	c) servants	d) architects
My father really	the idea that women	n can have children an	d a job at the same tir
a) supposes	b) figures	c) opposes	d) oppresses
If you visit Egypt,	it is to wear	a hat if you go out in	the sun.
a) advice	b) advise	c) advisor	d) advisable
The crew of a sma	all fishing boat has	during a storm a	it sea.
a) appeared	b) gone missing	c) sunk	d) disagreed
Many people died	in the terrible	of the Second World	War.
a) beetles	b) bottles	c) foils	d) battles
	this neighbourhood before		
a) violent	b) cruel	c) strange	d) familiar
My brother studie	d hard the ex	am was very hard so l	he got low marks.
a) Fortunately	b) Fortunate	c) Unfortunate	d) Unfortunately
There was growing	g to the build	ing of the factory in th	ne village.
a) oppose	b) opposition	c) opposing	d) disposing
Mr Essam worked	so hard that he	fell ill.	
a) rarely	b) fortunately	c) eventually	d) seldom

d) seldom

c) eventually

been more	than a lot of	Deople for but	
We remately	b) fortunate	c) unfactor having a jo	b,
a pond nove	is have been	eina - d	(i) unfortunately
James pales	b) sellers	white they were first w	ritten.
hoc very me	cong elements, but she all	Maxim to	
a tariam in	Is Vancasiana A	"y a tries to understand	the point of view
a) oppressing	one of England's greater	e) opposing	d) disposing
1 stespeare		Tie wrote	prout pagne and plays
scientists sion	b) astronauts began aroun b) organisation	c) workers	d) poets
Lacient Design	1.1	a 7,000 years ago,	
a revolution	b) organisation ser was one of the most	c) civilisation	d) solution
Comal Abdel Nass	b) organisation ser was one of the most b) powerful	men in the	Arab world.
nower	b) powerful re both famous for their	e) powerless	d) powered
all Coins a	re both famous for their		
Rome	b) up-to-date found and fine a	e) ancient	d) high-tech
a) lated	b) up-to-date found and fine a b) killed	fter being missing for so	everal days in the forest.
The Critical	b) killed to keep dogs locked	c) alive	d) life
a) dead	to keep dogs locked	up inside all day.	
I think it s	b) killed to keep dogs locked b) kind	e) merciful	d) cruel
a) Keen	t. during the	6th October Wor Hay	was a wayna officer
My father was	b) kind heduring the b) army of a fam	e) circus	d) embassy
a) farm	of a fam	concumitanta Escat	
My neighbour was	b) service	c) servant	d) serviced
Most of the popule	b) agriculture	c) literature	d) culture
a) economy	b) agriculture ut the author's real-life	in Africa.	
This is a book about	h) adventurous	c) adventurer	d) adventure's
a) adventure	Cup of Nations took	in Egypt and i	t was very successful.
a) care	orkers looking for coppe	r or brass suffer from b	ad working conditions.
_	rkers looking for coppe	c) mine	d) dine
a) mile	b) firemy children from their	r school. It's part of m	y daily routine.
		c) collect	d) deliver
a) connect	b) hand	eating what	
Before settling in o	ne place, people were	c) marines	d) hunters
a) fighters	b) sailors	c) marines	(1)
This giraffe was	in Africa, then	it was sent to our 200.	d) shot
a) arrested	b) captured	c) nanged	(1) 31100
He was sentenced to	o prison because of all	his actions.	d) delicate
a) criminal	b) affectionate	c) innocent	u) deficate

M Our around	protect us from any	possible attacks by e	nemies.
Out armen	b) sources	c) forces	d) powers
a) courses thic	ves have been trying to s	steal from	ancient tombe
For centuries, time	b) pressures	c) pleasures	d) depress:
Don't be so	. It's just a scary me	ovic. Switch the TV	off.
a) frighten	b) fright	c) frightening	d) frighten
I went to the airpor	rt to goodbye	to my friend.	Patrolled
a) tell	b) say	c) speak	(I) make
	him rich beca		
	b) found		
III An outbreak of bir	d flu a lot of	countries and caused	a lot of door
a) attacked	b) attended	c) attracted	d) defends.
Ali has improved l	nis since he j	oined the summer car	mn delenged
a) behave	b) behaving	c) behaviour	d) bohavait
■ A is a c	lear, very hard valuable	stone, used in iewell	ery and in indu-
a) diamond	b) gold	c) ring	d) neckless
The new factory h	as given a big push to th	ne of the c	ity
a) agriculture	b) treasure	c) economy	d) health
The government ma	anaged to develop the elec	etricity in Egyn	t during the last farm
a) bill	b) discipline	c) software	d) system
Organic food seen	ns to be gaining in	in many countr	ies a) system
a) account	b) popularity	c) quality	d) announcement
Historians believe	that the Nile	was the place of the	first human civilication
a) valley	b) flood	c) oasis	d) heights
The businessman	is rich enough to hire a	good to sn	eak for him in cour
a) writer	b) secretary	c) lawyer	d) designer
1 told my friend n	ot to be afraid to ask	help if he nee	eded it
a) in	b) on	c) with	d) for
My friend's	isn't good with he	r brother, but she's ve	ery close to her sister.
a) relationship	b) dispute	c) race	d) cure
	an Canada E	/	
	pen General E	Xercises (Voca	abulary) ==
Choose the correct	answer from a, b, c or	d:	
In accidents and	natural disasters, doctors	to enve n	aanla'a liyaa
a) dispute	b) battle	c) quarrel	eople's lives.
Photographers we	ere out in at t	he cinema after the c	d) quit
a) power	b) unit	c) army	d) force
(125)		,	d) loice

- local park Wa	is a an or per	ace for the when I was	young.
The word	b) resort	c) oasis	d) era
a) village	of investing	g all your money in one	e place.
Don't fall little and	b) resort c of investing b) trip	c) trickery	d) task
many people are	taking a/ani	nterest in match results	S.
a) easy	b) keen	c) extensive	d) difficult
a) casy	sister to cut the cookie	dough into	
1.1-006			
The WHO websit	te is a of info	ormation about diseases	5.
-mina	D) mine	c) well	d) hole
The bo	elieved that the Sun and	Moon were planets.	
vargiants	b) modern	c) developed	d) sophisticated
a) ancier-hy	the robbery on fil	m and handed it to the	police.
a) gave	b) arrested	c) captured	d) released
The driver was lu	icky to serio	us injury after the serio	us accident.
a) have	b) suffer	c) catch	d) escape

Grammar

Noun + Preposition

حل لـ حل لـ رد على	The police do not have an answer to rising crime. There are no simple solutions to the problem of pollution.
رد علی	
	We still haven't received a reply to our letter.
دمار لـ	The closure of the factory will cause damage to our economy.
زيادة في	There has been an increase in the price of petrol.
نقص في	There is a decrease in the number of deaths from heart disease.
اعتذار عن	My teacher accepted my apology for my behaviour.
سبب/ دافع	People give many reasons for wanting to change jobs.
مسبب	A lighted match was the cause of the fire.
i.	زیادة فی نقص فی اعتذار عن

مشكلة ال the problem of اصلاح ال the reform of إمداد من .. a supply of popularity of ا شعبية ال

The problem of street crime needs an urgent solution Many scientists take part in the reform of education I've only got a week's supply of sugar left. The popularity of the internet has soared lately

Adjective + Preposition

phone.

astonished at مندهش ل brilliant at رائع في good at جد نی clever at ماهر في bad at سبئ نی terrible at فظيع في angry about/at غاضب بشأن disappointed at خائب الأمل famous for مشهور ب fed up with شديد الملل من غاضب بشدة بسبب (شيء) furious about furious with غاضب من (شخص) sorry for آسف لفعل شيء good for مفيدك bad for ا سيئ لـ/مؤذ لـ responsible for م منول عن satisfied with راض/مقتنع بـ angry with annoyed with متضايق من شخص

Asmaa was astonished at her sister's courage Dina's brilliant at handling difficult clients. John is good at working in the garden. He is clever at skateboarding. I'm very bad at remembering people's names My brother is terrible at playing chess. Pat is angry about walking in the rain. I feel very disappointed at not getting the job Sandy is famous for singing songs. I'm fed up with this daily routine. My uncle is furious about the accident. The teacher is furious with the naughty stude He's sorry for eating in the lesson. Watching too much TV isn't good for you. Sleeping late is very bad for you. The airline is responsible for the safety of its page I'm not satisfied with the way he cut my har 'Please, don't be angry with me.' she said Sarah was annoyed with Ayah for forgettie

pleased with	سرور من	Mai was pleased with her exam results.
delighted with		Ola was delighted with her new home.
delignico	معروف/ محبوب لـ	This hotel is very popular with tourists.
popular with	خجلان من	I felt ashamed of the things I'd said to him.
ashamed of	واثق من	The company is confident of success.
confident of		The kitchen was full of smoke.
full of	ر . فخور بـ/ان	She is proud of riding a snowboard.
proud of/to		
afraid of	خانف من	They are afraid of losing the match.
frightened of	خانف من	110dbc.
terrified of	مرعوب من	The criminal was terrified of being caught.
	مرعوب من	I've always been scared of dogs.
scared of	مغرم ب	Hala is fond of going to parties.
fond of	قات عا	I'm worried about making mistakes.
worried about	ما د ما د	We are excited about making our own Him.
excited about		happy about seeing a doctor.
happy about	آسف علی ہ	I'm so sorry about your father. (= I am sorry something bad has happened to him).
sorry about	سیء	(=1 am sorry sometimes
mad about	مفتون بــ	He's mad about computer games.
crazy about	مفتون/مجنون بـــ	The girl is crazy about playing tennis.
rude to	فظ تجاه/ خشن مع	Why are you so rude to her?
cruel to	ا قاس/ وحشه تحاه	She was often cruel to her start
similar to	مشابه ل	Her ideas are quite similar to mine.
keen to + inf.	متحمس لفعل شيء	The government is keen to thise on my own.
keen on + v-ing	ا متحمس/شديد التوق	The government is keen to raise our salaries. I wasn't keen on going there on my own.
interested in	ا مهتم بـ	Are you interested in writing poems?

Verb + Preposition

apply tor

work for

blame for

look for

apologise for

يامل في hope for

ا ينتمي إلى/ يخص belong to

apologise to

complain to

manage to

die of

accuse of

dream of

consist of

hear of

hear from

complain of

congratulate on

concentrate on

He has applied for many jobs lately.

She works for a big law firm in the city.

ا يلوم ..على l can't blame you for committing the crime.

I spent most of the morning looking for my passport.

I apologise for taking so long to reply.

The best I can hope for is to get high marks.

The car belongs to the woman next door.

I apologised to the customers for wasting their money.

He threatened to complain to the boss.

I managed to escape by diving into the river.

He died of cancer. پموت من (مرض مثلاً)

Her employers accused her of theft.

ا بحلم بـ I dream of being a famous player.

Breakfast consisted of dry bread and a cup of tea.

We didn't hear of his death until many years later. I haven't heard from you for a long time.

She'd been complaining of headaches. He complained of being robbed.

ا يهني على I congratulated him on passing the exam.

Stop talking and concentrate on your work.

divini on	يعثماء طامي	I usually depend on my father.
reb on count on	colo chair	You can always count on him for good advice.
where m	برمن ہے۔	I don't believe in miraeles.
in breithe	ينجح لمى	I succeeded in getting a good job.
take part in	يشارك في	All students took part in the discussions.
m floza	يؤدى إلى/ينتج عنه	The crash resulted in the death of 9 passengers
care about for	المنام بـ/ يعتني بـ	I don't think she cares about him at all.
complain about المس عنه	پشکو من شیء هو نمبر را	
know about	يعرف عن	He doesn't know about our culture,
find out about	يمرف عن/ يكتشف عن	I don't want anyone else to find out about this secret.
learn about	يملم عن	We didn't learn about the situation until it was too late.
prevent from		The police prevented the thief from escaping.
protect from		The hat protected his face from the sun.
recover from		I haven't fully recovered from that flu I had,
suffer from		She suffered from depression اكتاب for most of her life.
result from		The arrests resulted from a telephone call.
escape from	پهرب س	
run out of	ينفا	We ran out of petrol before reaching Cairo.
supply with	يزود بـــ	
stop from	يمنع من	We should stop children from staying up late.
increase by	يزداد بنسبة	Next year, it's expected that tourism will increase by 15%.

Check Point	0		
Choose the correct of	uswer from a, b, c or	as:	
III He is very fond	animals.	111	
n) on	b) about	e) to	d) of
1 knew he was fam	oux King So	domon's Mines.	W/ ()(
40 TOF	b) from	e) about	d) to
Nobody knows the	real reason for the file	n's popularity	children.
10	b) for	c) of	41 v. det
I Huda loves English	i, but she's not very go	ood matl	18,
11/10/	b) by	to les	ally so tax
When did Azza find	d that she ha	d won the maths p	prize?
W. State	D) about	e) of	d) from
When Nihal finishe	s university, she's goi	ng to apply	n job abroad.
with	b) for	c) to	415
In 1918, millions of	people all over the w	orld died	Spanish flu.
	b) of	c) with	al) as
Samira is very inter a) to	ested medic	ine and wants to b	be a doctor.
	b) of	c) for	d) in
The popularity a) with	Mohammed Sal	ah has increased r	ecently.
	b) from	c) of	d) to
The teacher asked the	students to find out	different kinds	of energy for homework
n) about	b) of	c) to	d) for

Extra Points

0 بأتى بعد حروف الجر v-ing أو الاسم أو الضمير ما عدا 10 فيأتي بعدها المصدر.

- · Dina is good at playing chess.
- · I have always dreamt of going to the moon.
- I'm sorry about the noise last night.
- You get bored/fed up with doing the same thing every day.
- They were furious with me for not inviting them to my party.

138

◊ هناك تعبيرات وأفعال قليلة تستخدم بعدها ٧-ing + ١٥؛

To + v-ing/noun

look forward to يتطلع إلى be used to يعتاد على get used to يعتاد على accustomed to يعتاد على ا يعتاد على/يدمن nake to object to یعترض علی in addition to بالإضافة إلى admit to be opposed to يعارض confess to adjust to adapt to یتکیف علی devote to be addicted to

I look forward to meeting you tonight!

He's not used to driving on the left-hand side of the road!

It took weeks to get used to living in that old city.

He had become accustomed to living without electricity.

Recently he's taken to wearing a cap.

He objects to spending so much money on a TV.

Writing, in addition to speaking, is very difficult.

In court he admitted to lying about the accident.

I am opposed to increasing taxes.

He confessed to killing his next-door neighbour.

She adjusted to having neighbours around her.

Sand cats are adapted to living in the desert.

Mother Teresa devoted her life to helping the poor. الـ

Mo'men is addicted to playing PES 2017.





لتجنب بعض الأخطاء الشائعة ادخل على

Grammar Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: Ahmed is extremely proud his students' rapid progress. c) for d) of b) about a) from Mr Mohamed is not very good remembering his students' names. d) about c) at b) for a) on He's very unpredictable. He's always full surprises! c) about d) off b) of My father objected my going to the cinema. d) for c) on b) about a) to A lot of diseases resulted pollution. c) to d) of b) from They were furious me for not inviting them to my party. d) about c) with b) to a) of Are you excited going on holiday next week? d) to c) about b) of a) on We stayed at home because Mariam wasn't very keen going out in the min d) about c) of b) on The flat is nice, but we object to without electricity. d) living b) being lived c) live a) be lived She doesn't often go out in the night because she's afraid the dark. c) of b) at a) from II I've never seen so many people before. I'm astonished the crowds. d) from c) with b) at a) about I don't feel sorry her because her problems are her own fault. d) from b) on c) to a) about He is responsible what appears in his newspaper. d) for b) at c) on a) from She is brilliant repairing things. d) with b) at c) to a) on 15 I'm angryhim for telling lies about me. d) from b) at a) about I can't understand people who are cruel animals. b) about c) from d) to a) at Your shoes are similar mine but they are not exactly the same.

b) to

a) on

c) from

d) with

wary kind o	f you to for your	old parents	
It is very	f you to	c) afraid	d) care
Ministry of	Education supplies our school b) with	ool	u) Cale
a) by	b) with	c) on	d) in
a) by	that the population of Egypt b) with	will increase	15% in 2030
Experts	b) with	c) by	d) on
a) in	vere looking diam	ionds.	u) on
	0,101	1-1 111	d) after
a) to	e reform agriculti	ire.	d) arter
	U) about	Clot	d) to
a) on	learning more abo	ut him.	4) 10
a) in	b) to	c) on	d) about
Mybat's the mai	n reason for the popularity	Rider H	aggard's books?
a) about	b) to	c) with	d) of
MHe was so	at writing exciting sto		
a) fond	b) good	c) proud	d) popular
	ggard's books always been p		
	b) at	c) with	d) of
There's been ar	n increase sales in	recent years.	
	b) in		d) on
	him at all until la	ast week.	
a) with	b) of	c) to	d) on
They had four	sons, but one of them died.	a child	hood disease when he was
only ten.	,		
a) to	b) with	c) of	d) out
What environm	nental problem are you most	worried	?
a) with	b) to	c) about	d) in
What is the ans	wer the problem	of climate change	?
a) from	b) to	c) about	d) in
Which job will	you apply in the	future?	
a) for	h) in	c) about	d) on
William Shakar	speare is more famous	his plays the	an his poems.
a) of		c) from	d) by
	b) for car belongs my		
al to-	* * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * *	CITO	d) by
I play los-	b) with ports, but I'm not very keen	watchi	ng sport on TV.
a) to		c) for	d) at
710	b) on		

You weren't at scho	ol yesterday, so how o	lid you find	about the homeworks
** ** ((1)	(i) fixmi	mi imi	d) of
We could run out	oil in the nev	d twenty years.	
41 (11	h) fram	e) with	d) in
My daughter is	at writing exci		
a) keen	b) interested	•	d) proud
E Farida is very good	writing sto		1,1,000
a) for	b) at		d) to
You should apologi		cher for forgetting you	
a) about	b) at	e) for	d) to
He didn't apologise	Ahmed w	hen he was ill	
11 10 11811	b) of visiting	as from more valuable.	not for visities
f f aming the same	increased	15 percent lately	to not for visiting
at tit	b) by	(1) 10	d) of
The object	the exercise was to	build a sense of teamy	unek
at with	0) (0	c) for	d) of
They were keen	attend my par	rty.	ar of
3) (0	b) about	e) on	A) Con
I'm bein	g treated as a child.		d) for
a) fed up at	b) fed with	e) fed up with	A) F. J
was astonished	so many peo	ple there	d) fed up to
a) to seeing	b) to see	c) to bains	Av en Veneza
If you don't know t	he answer, don't be a	fraid em an	d) to be seen
1110	01 01	c) from	15
Some residents opp	osed to the	e high school after a re-	d) about
a) name	b) naming	c) be named	
Courses can be adapted to the course can be adapted to the	pted the ne	eds of the individual	d) names
a) to being suited	b) to be suited	c) to suiting	
You have to apply	the passpor	rt office for a view	d) to suit
a) to	b) about	c) for	
			d) of
<u>O</u> o	en General E	Xercises (Gra	mmar)
Choose the correct ar	iswer from a, b, e or	· d;	
Tamer and Samar	for Dubai a	t 8 o'clock next Tuesde	w morning
a) have left	b) had left	c) have been leav	ing all and braving
You you	r magazines on the be	ed! Please clean us	ing (1) are leaving
a) had always left			
a) ma majoren	me minays tear	me commays left	d) have always k

1420

to the	cinema.		
He to the	o) is offer going	c) often goes	d) is going often
- Comal CO	imputer games for an	hour now.	
has been playing	D) plays	c) has played	d) is playing
It was clever of him	the crossw	ord in five minutes.	
a) did	b) do	c) doing	d) to do
I don't know when h	ne would	you like to wait?	
a) returned	b) will return	c) has returned	d) returns
Ahmed a	s an engineer for five	years, then he became	a university professor.
a) worked	b) has worked	c) has been working	
Who taught you	a car?		
a) driving	b) to drive	c) drive	d) drove
The man	invented the telephor	ne was called Alexande	er Graham Bell.
a) whose	b) what	c) who's	d) who
You must get here	7 o'clock o	r else we will have to le	eave without you.
a) on	b) by	c) until	d) during

Communication

Skills

مراجعة المهارات بالتفصيل برجي الرجوع إلى ملحق المراجعة.

Language Functions

Asking for and responding to help

طلب المساعدة والرد عليها

Asking for help

- * Please, could you help me to (lift this desk)?
- *I wonder if you could help me with my homework.
- I don't suppose you could help me with (my homework).
- Would it be possible for you to help me with my homework?

Responding to help

الموافقة

- · Yes, of course.
- · Yes, what's the problem?
- What would you like me to do?
- I'd be happy to help.

عدم الموافقة

- · Sorry, I can't.
- I'm afraid, I can't.



Writing: A reply to an email

Leila's friend Aisha is working with a charity and promised to collect money for it on Saturday. Yet, she can't spend all the day in town, so she asked Leila for help.



From : Leila To : Aisha

Subject: Agreeing to help.

Dear Aisha,

I'd like to tell you that I'm OK. These days, I'm working on a project for my school. Are you doing well?

In your email you asked me to help you collect money for a charity on Saturday. I'd like to ask you what charity are you helping and what kind of service this charity provides people. I'd like to say that I'm ready to help you, but I can only do this in the morning. I have some important things to do in the evening.

Please, email me soon to say whether my offer will help.

Love,

Leila

Skills EXercises

- Write an essay of about (150) words on one of the following:
 - The kind of stories or films you enjoy in your free time.
 - How can we encourage children and young men to take reading as a hobby?
- (2) A) Translate into Arabic:
 - 1. Adventure stories about strange places are still popular with many people nowadays. This is also true about space exploration stories.
 - 2. African civilisation has always been a mystery that excites many people all over the world. Many adventurers still think of Africa as a mine of treasures.
 - 3. Freedom of expression must have rules. It is your right to express your opinion freely, but you must respect the others.

- 4. Private schools and universities can play a role in developing education and enhancing students' abilities. They have more facilities than public ones.
- 5. The story represents the battle between good and evil in the fight for power. However, good triumphs in the end.
- 6. We owe a lot to the people who have made great contributions to making the world a better place. Scientists and thinkers are at the top of them.

B) Translate into English:

- ١- إن استثمار الطاقة البشرية وتنميتها هما السبيل للتقدم لأن البشر هم الذين يصنعون الحضارة.
- ٢- رغم أننا نعيش عصر العلم والتطور التكنولوجي لا يزال هناك مغامرون يحلمون باكتشاف الكنوز المفقودة.
 - ٣- تهتم الحكومة بإصلاح نظام التعليم لمواكبة التطور العلمي المستمر ولإنتاج جيل واع ونافع لبلده.
- ٤- أسعد فوز الفريق المصرى لكرة اليد للشباب بالميدالية البرونزية لكأس العالم ١٩ ٢٠١ كل المصريين لذا قام رئيس الجمهورية بتكريمهم.
- ٥- لم يكن دور الرحالة القدماء وصف الأماكن فقط ولكنهم كانوا يسجلون مظاهر الحضارة في كل بلد يزورونها. ٦- بالرغم من أن التليفزيون هو أكبر وسائل الترفيه إلا أننا يمكن أن نستخدمه كوسيلة للثقافة والمعرفة.

Enrich your Vocabulary

	مظاهر	generation	جيل
aspects		20 mm 18 mm 18	تكريم
contributions	إسهامات	honour	191
	يعزز	means	وسائل
enhance	gan by the latter to the first	mystery	سرا غموض
culture	الثقافة		يمثل
excite	يثير	represent	
exche	الرحالة	respect	يحترم
explorers	الوحالة		يتتصر/انتصاد
freedom	الحرية	triumph	



TEST 5 Based on Unit 13

لمزيد من الامتحانات على هذه الوحدة ادخل على

Choose the correc	t answer from a, b,	c or d:	
Reforming educa	ition is an important fa	ctor in the agains	t ignorance and superstiti
a) quarrel	b) battle	c) race	d) competition
The president's	were appoi	nted to be consulted bef	ore taking a decision.
a) advisers	b) drivers	c) astronauts	d) pilots
When my kid	missing just	for a while, I lost my m	ind.
a) came	b) arrived	c) went	d) played
Unfortunately, t	he little fox got its fo	ot caught in a	and was badly hurt
a) nest	b) trap	c) hole	d) trick
Ine team broug	ht a/an of s	upporters to the stadium	with them.
a) ministry	b) class	c) area	d) army
The verb seize	is similar in meaning	g to the verb	
a) release	b) attract	c) capture	d) advise
The was sorry	me on, while	I was having dinner	
a) for not callin	g b) for calling	c) not for calling	d) not to call
Bon t use that p	en, it belongs	the director!	a) not to can
a) to	b) in	c) of	d) for
My father work	S an interna	tional oil company	
a) Hom	b) to	c) for	d) about
There has been	an increase	the number of tourists g	oing to Luyer
4) 111	D) at	c) for	71 0
You should apol	Ogise to your teacher	Alexander 1	
a) HOIII	D) (O	c) for	* **
	9 potomon a mine?	I had never heard	Didor Hospard
** / 111	D) 01	Cltrom	d) with
My teacher acce	epted my apology	my behaviour.	u) willi
a) on	b) at	c) for	d) of
Asmaa was asto	nished her	sister's courage	u) or
a) at	b) about	c) of	d\ ~~
I can't blame yo	ucommitti	ng the crime.	d) on
a) of	b) for	c) on	d) about
16 He had become	accustomed to	without electricity.	d) about
a) live	b) be lived	c) being lived	d) living

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Video and television are responsible for the declining interest in reading among youth. They do nothing to build up reading skills. If the children's time is devoted to reading, the population would be better educated.

Reading a story is an active partnership between writer and reader. Ideas are sketched and the mind of the reader creates the rest, but watching something is totally passive.

The problem is that many children read very slowly. It is hardly surprising that such children declare that they find reading boring and prefer to watch television.

Their difficulty is not reading the words – it is interpreting them. They need to be able to read fast enough to feed the mind's hunger for a story. Only by reading daily a child will become a strong and *independent* reader.

Parents need to be convinced of the importance of preventing their children from wasting their time. Without the television, the child is likely to turn to books for entertainment.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Reading helps people to be	
a) well-paid	b) good actors
c) well-educated	d) good writers
The underlined pronoun "they"	refers to
a) the young	b) video and television
c) children	d) reading skills
According to the writer's view,	TV is means of entertainment.
a) not an effective	b) an encouraging
c) an effective	d) not a cheap
The synonym of the word "inde	ependent' is
a) active	b) intelligent
c) aware	d) self-determining

B) Answer the following questions:

- 21 What is the writer's main objection to video and TV?
- What is the difference between reading a story and watching something?
- The writer believes that visual images, such as watching television, spoil the imagination.
- How can we encourage reading among people? Give two ways.

Translate into Arabic:

The continuous progress in all scientific fields makes it harder for the developing countries to keep up with the developed countries.

26 Translate into English:

-بعب بعض الناس السفر للبلاد الإفريقية بحثا عن المغامرة والإثارة أو كليهما على الرغم من الظروف الصعبة التي

Write an essay of about 180 words on the following topic:

How can we encourage children and young men to take reading as a hobby?





Digital media

Objectives

Listening : Predicting; listening for detail

Grammar : Conditionals

Reading : Reading for specific information

Critical thinking: Considering the advantages of social networking sites

Functions : Giving warnings

Writing : Writing an email giving a warning

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

cassette player (n)	مشغل كاسيت/ موسيقي
chat (v) (ted)	يدردش
disadvantages (n)	عيوب
download (v) (ed)	يحمِّل من الإنترنت
DVD (n)	أسطوانة (دي في دي)
exclude (v) (d)	يستبعد
exclusion (n)	استبعاد/ استثناء

irritable (adj)	والتوتر	 سريع الغضب
more or less		تقريثا
rule (n)		قاعدة
stick to (v) (stuck - s	tuck)	يلتزم بـ
type (v) (d)	لكمبيوتر)	یکتب (علی ا
unpleasant (adj)	لطيف	غير سار/غير
video (n)	فيديو	شريط/مقطع

Vocabulary On Listening

actually (adv)	بالفعل
advertise (v) (d)	يعلن
advertisement (n)	إعلان
brief (adj)	مختصر
careful (adj)	حريص
contact (v) (ed) (n)	يتصل/ اتصال
discussion (n)	مناقشة
join (v) (ed)	ينضم إلى
language (n)	لغة
online (adj) (adv)	عبر/ متصل بالإنترنت

owner (n)	مالك
own (v) (ed)	يمتلك
polite (adj)	مؤدب
politeness (n)	أدب
probably (adv)	من المحتمل
public (adj)	عام
realise (v) (d)	يدرك
remind (v) (ed)	يُذكر
rude (adj)	افع/غیر مؤدب
subject (n)	موضوع
upset (adj)	منزعج

Focus on Vocabulary

cassette player	مشغل کاسیت/ موسیقی	a machine that plays music on a cassette
chat	يدردش	talk in a friendly way
disadvantages	عيوب	things that cause problems, or that make someone or something less likely to be successful or effective
download	يحمِّل من الإنترنت	to move information or programs from a computer network to a small computer
DVD	أسطوانة (دى في دى)	a digital video disc that can store enough information to play a film
exclude	يستبعد	stop someone going to a place or taking part in something
irritable	سريع الغضب والتوتر	petting annoyed quickly or easily
more or less	تقريبًا	▶ about, approximately
rule	قاعدة	▶ an instruction that says what you can and can't do
stick to	يلتزم بـ	not change what you are doing, or what you have decided to do
type	يكتب (على الكمبيوتر)	write using a keyboard
unpleasant	غير سار/غير لطيف	describes something that causes unhappiness or discomfort
video	شريط فيديو	▶ a tape of a film or television programme

Expressions & Idioms

break the rules	يخالف القواعد	make sad	حزن
find it hard to	يجد من الصعب أن	make new friends	كون صداقات جديدة
go for a swim	يذهب للسباحة	make noise	حدث ضوضاء
touch with	يفقد الاتصال ب	pass an exam/ a test	جناز امتحانًا

Phrases & Prepositions

addicted to	مدمن ل	full of	ملیء بـ
agree with	يتفق مع	rude to	وقح مع
chat with/to	يدردش مع	sell to	يبيغ ك
disadvantages of	عيوب لـ	unpleasant to	غير لطيف مع
exclude from	يستبعد من	warn about/ of	يحذر من

Words, Synonyms and Antonyms

Word	Meaning	المرادف Synonym	نياد Antonym	المذ
hat	دردشة	conversation	silence	صمت
lisadvantages	عيوب	demerits	advantages	مميزات
exclude	يستبعد	ignore/eliminate	include	يشمل/يتضمن
тitable	سريع الغضب	prickly	cheerful	مبتهج / مرح
stick	يلتزم	adhere	disobey	يخالف/ لا يطيع
unpleasant	غير سار	disagreeable	pleasant	سار
brief	موجز	concise	lengthy/ detailed	مستفيض
contact	اتصال	connection	separation	فصل/انقصال
probably	من المحتمل	likely	improbably/unlikely	من غير المحتمل
upset	مرعج	worried/ annoyed	calm/ comfortable	هادئ
doubt	شك	confusion	certainty/ faith	تأكد/ يقين
replace	ستىدل	a e i a caracter accessor to	keep	بحافظ على

Notes on Vocabulary

advertise

announce

advertise

بلن عن منتج أو افتتاح مكان أو وظيفة

- ▶ The perfume has been advertised in all the major women's magazines.
- We need to advertise for a new chef for the restaurant.

بعلن/يذبع (خبرًا أو معلومة)

- ▶ The government announced plans to open more factories.
- ▶ We arrived just as they were announcing the arrival of father's flight.

communicate contact connect

communicate

بنواصل/يتفاهم

▶ People use more than words when they communicate with each other.

ينها د/ يحتك بـ/ اتصال

- As my friend is abroad, we contact by email.
- There is very little contact between the two cities.
- ▶ The railway connects Cairo with most cities in Egypt.

بصل/ يربط بين شيثين

Abbreviations

الاختصارات هي استخدام أجزاء من الكلمات أو استخدام الحروف الأولى من مجموعة من الكلمات للدلالة عليها ومن هذه الاختصارات:

an	I success w	صارات.
CD	compact disc	اسطوانة (قرص مدمج)
IT	information technology	تكنولوجيا المعلومات
PC	personal computer	حاسوب شخصى
www	World Wide Web	شكة الإنترنت العالمية
ID	identity card	بطاقة هوية
BCE	before common era	
DVD	digital video disc or digital versatile disc	قبل الميلاد
	- Bran retoutile disc	قرص فيديو رقمي

private

special

and ale

خصوصي (خاص بشخص أو مجموعة محددة)

My grandfather didn't want to discuss his private life with anyone.

secial

خاص (من نوع خاص)

Tonly wear this suit on special occasions, like weddings.

realise

recognise

realise

١-يدرك

٢- يحقق (طمو حًا/ نجاحًا)

I suddenly realised that the boy was crying.

She never realised her ambition of winning an Olympic gold medal.

recognise

يتعرف على

I hadn't seen her for ten years, but I recognised her immediately.

social

sociable

social

اجتماعي (تستخدم لوصف الأشياء)

Group play helps children develop social skills.

sociable

اجتماعي (تستخدم لوصف الأشخاص)

She's a friendly, sociable woman.

weather

climate

weather

طفس (حالة الجو لفترة قصيرة)

What's the weather like today?

climate

مناخ (حالة الجو لفترة طويلة)

Scotland's climate is too cold for some plants to grow.

Check Point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Egypt Air regrets to the cancellation of flight BA205 to Madrid, b) announce The _____ is expected to remain clear for the next few days. d) accuse b) atmosphere Most students are more when their exams are over. d) hemisphere b) individual Most villages in Upper Egypt are now by roads. d) sociable b) contacted My friend goes to a/ an governmental school for the blind. d) chattered b) special 6 It is said that dolphins use sound to with each other. d) obvious b) connect The young couple finally their goal of buying a summer home. d) link 8 Overpopulation is one of the country's serious problems. d) realised b) sociable c) solo d) suicidal



Listening Text ())

Taha: Hi, Imad. Could I ask your advice about something?

Imad: Sure, how can I help?

Taha: Well, I've just joined an online discussion group and I'm not sure what the rules are.

Imad: What's the subject of the group?

Taha: Birds.

Imad: Actually, it doesn't really matter what the subject is. If you join any discussion group, the rules are more or less(1) the same. Probably the most important rule is that you must always be polite. You can disagree with other people, but you must not be rude or unpleasant(2) to them.

تغريبًا (1)

That's the same as when you're actually with people. If I was

(3) ناعدة (1) That's the same as when you're actually with people. If I was with people I didn't know very well, I would never be rude to them.

يكتب (على الكمبيوتر) (4)

Yes, of course. Another rule(3) is that you shouldn't try to (5) يلزياد المعاملة على المعاملة ع advertise or sell things to members of the group.

بنعد (6)

Taha: That's OK. I've got nothing to sell. If I contact the group, I'll only tell people about birds that I've seen, or ask them questions about birds.

1mad: What else? Remember to type(4) carefully and don't write long messages. What language does the group use?

Taha: It's an international group, so we use English.

Imad: Another thing to remember is that your messages are public, which means that anyone can read them: your family, your friends, even your teacher.

Taha: Oh yes, I hadn't thought about that.

Imad: Yes, you must be careful not to make anyone upset. And another thing: you should always stick to(5) the subject.

Taha: That's OK. I only want to write about birds.

Imad: There's probably a Help page where you can ask other members questions if you aren't sure about anything. And if you write anything that you shouldn't, the owner of the group may email you to remind you about the rules.

Taha: I didn't realise that discussion groups had owners.

Imad: Most of them do. It can be quite an important job if it's a busy group and there are a lot of members. Sometimes they exclude(6) people from the group if they break the rules.

Taha: I'm sure that I won't break any rules. But anyway, thanks a lot, that's really helpful advice.

Imad: That's OK. If I had known that you were joining the discussion group, I would have joined, too. I love birds!

Taha: It's not too late. You can join now!

Reading Text

Young people and technology

If you had asked young people 20 years ago how they spent their free time, they would probably have said that they watched television and videos⁽¹⁾, listened to music on cassette players⁽²⁾ or spent time with their friends.



If you asked the same question today, the answers would be very different. Although we still watch television, there are many more channels than there were in the past, and DVDs⁽³⁾ have replaced videos. We now listen to CDs, but more of us are downloading⁽⁴⁾ music and films from the internet. We can listen to or watch these on computers or mobile phones.

Of course, we still spend time with our friends, but more of our conversations with them are by text message or through online social networking sites like Facebook and Twitter. These are becoming more popular as ways of communicating with friends and of making new friends. Some people are spending more time chatting⁽⁵⁾ to their virtual friends than to their real friends.

اشرطة فيديو (1)

احهزة تشغيل كاسبت (2)

المطوانات (دي في دي) (3)

يحمل من الإنترنت (4)

يدردش (5)

عيرب (6)

بفقد الانصال به (7)

سريع الغضب (8)

There is no doubt that modern technology allows us to communicate with many more people than we could in the past, but there are disadvantages⁽⁶⁾. Researchers have found that some people are losing touch with⁽⁷⁾ their real friends and becoming addicted to their mobile phones, to their computers and to social networking sites. If they cannot use their phones and computers, some people become nervous and irritable⁽⁸⁾. And if more people become addicted to their phones, they will find it hard to make real friends.

Notes

on some sentences from (Listening & Reading) texts

These are becoming more popular as ways of communicating with friends and of making new friends.

- استخدمت as للتعبير عن الحقيقة وليس للتشبيه بمعنى (ك أو بصفته).

Vocabulary Exercises

hoose the correct	answer	from a.	b. core	1.

	bers can bei	f they break the rules.	
a) included	b) excluded	c) rewarded	d) decoded
I was meeting thes	e chaps who were mostl	y my own a	age.
a) less or more	b) less or less	c) more and more	d) more or less
The doctor says if	you well to y	our diet, you will lose	
a) stay	b) tie	c) stick	d) attach
4 You must	your password to be	able to use your email.	
a) type	b) take	c) read	d) present
My sister had such	a/an experience	e at the park that she re	fused to go there again.
a) attractive	b) nice	c) pleasant	d) unpleasant
6 The man says he's	unable to give up smok	ing as he's completely	to it,
a) addicted	b) attained	c) attacked	d) applied
The most importar	nt of treating	people is that you mus	st be polite.
a) download	b) discussion	c) role	d) rule
One of the	of this car is that it	uses a lot of petrol.	
a) advantages	b) disadvantages	c) quantities	d) merits

My sister spends	hours on the phone	with her friends	s.
a) chatting	b) choking	c) checking	d) cheating
10 You can	a copy of some progra	ammes from many wel	osites for free.
a) load	b) overload	c) upload	d) download
III Since Magdy gay	e up smoking, people co	omplain that he's been	really
	b) irritable		
	ve touch with		
a) gained			d) missed
If The new perfume	e has been in		S.
a) advertised	b) announced	c) produced	d) repaired
14 The children wer	e very that w	e couldn't go to the zoo	at the weekend.
a) delighted	b) pleased	c) appointed	d) disappointed
15 My grandfather	the navy when	he was 18 and he spent	a happy time at the sea
a) retired	b) joined	c) left	d) missed
16 More and more pe	eople are buying things	as it is easier	and cheaper than shops
a) online	b) offline	c) up line	d) in line
17 The children spen	nt a/ an day a	t the beach and didn't v	vant to go back home.
a) awful	b) terrible	c) cloudy	d) pleasant
18 Students can get	all kinds of information	from the neighbouring	library.
a) special	b) general	e) public	d) empty
19 All the messages	you write on the discuss	ion group should be	and easy to read.
a) bright	b) complex	c) brief	d) long
	e internet are	friends. They are not r	eal.
a) visual	b) virtual	c) vertical	d) factual
21 The young man	me that we had	d in fact met before at a	conference in London.
a) reminded	b) remembered	c) mentioned	d) memorized
22 I wanted to watch	the film, but my father c	hanged the to w	atch the football match.
a) canal	b) channel	c) set	d) video
23 Parents sometime	s find it difficult to	with their teena	ge children.
a) link	b) connect	c) communicate	d) attach
24 It is believed that	email has largely	the traditional but	siness letter.
a) replaced	b) placed	c) renewed	d) destroyed
160			

young men	spend most of their time	On seed a	
the Facebook.	spend most of their time	on social networking	, especially
	la) mir.		, , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,
a) sights		e) views	d) logs
In India	big economic and socialb) collocation	between the	he poor and the rich
a) concernos	b) collocation	c) contrast	d) connect
Doctors believe	nat thousands of patients h b) injured	lave from th	Te new treatment so for
a) harmed	b) injured	c) healed	d) benefited
a voll [Citit) Hees P	to the time to	Pitter - I t	,
al Commonte	- A STOPICION	(1) all .	
Will was		Train of L	
11 / 441 /		Cloopfil	
Many people nov	and thicit	ict for getting informa	tion and news
II) ICPI		(') imple	
Doctors sometim	b) warn	at their medicine will I	have side off-
il) IC well co	o) wain	C) award	45
My friend was sa	ad that he didn't	his driving test vest	terday
a) pass	b) succeed	c) manage	d) 6-21
The c	of social networking sites	increases every year	d) fail
a) position	b) population	c) probability	4)
It is not advisable	le to chat with other peop	ole about your	u) popularity
a) special	b) public	c) private	life on the internet
The clerk won't	last long in his job, if he	is so	d) general
a) polite	b) rude		
		c) caring	d) active
was very	to hear that the pa		cancelled.
a) upset	b) pleased	c) appointed	d) delighted
I have some	about the new clerk's	s ability to do the job.	He doesn't seem efficient
a) assets	b) prohibitions	c) doubts	d) calamities
Finding a cure f	or cancer is one of the b	piggest challenges faci	ing medical
a) paramedics	b) facilities		d) researchers
I promised my	friend to send him a		
	recon to seno min a	message as se	
a) chot			d) photo
a) chat	b) text	c) call	d) photo
a) chat		c) call	d) photo d) hurt

My cousin is a grea	nt lover of m	unia afiliana Cara	
a) pop	h) mode	usic of Upper Egypt.	
My uncle gives los	b) modern tures at the	c) traditional	d) civil
a) station	tures at the	of education at Ain Sh	ams University.
My brother is	b) colleague	c) division	d) college
a) irritable	b) nervous	g again after the terri	ble accident he bar
The plan in 1	b) nervous	c) active	d) astonished
a) facture	on a true story about	people in Afr	ica.
We lived	b) imaginary	c) forged	d) real
We fived so close t	to the sea that we could b) boats	hear the bi	reaking on the t
waves	b) boats	c) winds	d) thus t
parents always	complain that I waste n b) in	nuch time chatting	d) thunders
a) about	b) in	e) to	my triends onli
Getting low marks	in his final exams	his family	d) over
Mohamed Salah's	sharing in the program.	c) caused	d) made
*****************	sharing in the programi	me against drugs helpe	ed some people fight
a) ambition			
Many students are	b) distinction punished because of	c) destination	d) addiction
a) breaking	h) keeping		iles.
	b) keeping written as a/an	c) obeying	d) fixing
a) form	b) tupe		
111111111111111111111111111111111111111	b) type	c) abbreviation	d) replacement
Op	en General E	Xercicos (Ven	
Choose the correct a	answer from a, b, c or		Dulary)
The police have	the C	a:	
a) included	theft as a moti	ive for the murder as r	no money was stolen.
-) moraded	b) excluded	C) expected	
a) uploads	of the nightly new	s from the BBC's hor	ne page.
a) uploads	b) information	c) downloads	4) 4
wly book got wet i	n the rain and all the pa	ages have t	ogether.
a) stuck	b) kept	c) closed	d) avameted
The Police said that	at a DNA mi	ust be done to all the	accident victims.
a) imagination	b) search	c) programme	d) typing
			~/ ·J P6
In / IC II			

wear a for or companies go	
Every year a lot of companies go and have stock ma a) public The manager said that all the complaints about the company's phrough the proper	d) special
a) canals b) shares c) channels Finding a cheap place to rent is a/an impossibility in Alexa a) imaginative b) available c) visual Most Charities' head offices are in the capital	
a) accompanied b) sited c) exempted My father can't eat grapes - they	d) demolished
The word "demerit" is similar in meaning to the word	d) annoy
a) advantage (b) popularity (c) acceptance	d) disadvantage

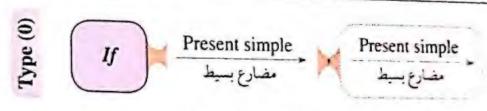
Grammar

The Conditional Sentence الجملة الشرطية



The Zero Conditional

العالة الشرطية الصفرية



- تعبر الحالة الصفرية عن الحقائق والظواهر الطبيعية (شيء لا نتحكم فيه).

- If water gets very cold, it turns into ice.
- If you drop something, it falls to the ground.

- وتعبر الحالة الصفرية أيضًا عن عادة متكررة لذي الشخص ويمكن استخدام when في هذه الحالة:

- -If/When I feel ill, I stay at home. (continuous habit)
- If I use the computer for a long time, I usually always have a headache.

Active	Passive
If we heat ice, it melts.	Ice melts if it is heated.



The First Conditional

العالة الشرطية الأولى



Present simple , مضارع بسيط

(will - may - can should + inf.

نهر الحالة الأولى عن حدث محتمل في المستقبل.

- If he leaves early, he will be on time for the meeting.
- If she comes late, we will miss the bus.
- If he doesn't repay the debt, he'll go to prison.

- نخدم (should) في جواب الشرط للنصيحة و(have to) للوجوب والإلزام.

- If you want to get high marks, you should study hard.
- If you lose your credit card, you have to ring the bank.

-بعكن استخدام may للاحتمال و can للاستطاعة.

- If you speak English well, you may get this job.
- We can go for a walk if you come early.
- If there is an airport here, we will be able to (can) travel abroad easily.

- نعر الحالة الأولى عن وعد أو أمنية أو تهديد.

- If you come first in the English test, I will give you this good camera.
- If I win the gold medal, I will be very famous.
- I won't lend you any money if you insist on spending it carelessly.

-بمكن أن يبدأ جواب الشرط في الحالة الأولى بأمر (مصدر) أو نهي:

- If you are tired, go to bed.
- If Samy visits you, don't tell him about our meeting.

The Second Conditional

العالة الشرطية الثانية





Past simple

(would - might could) + inf.

- If I saw a ghost, I would run away.

نعر الحالة الثانية عن حدث غير محتمل في المضارع أو المستقبل. (unlikely to happen)

- If I discovered a planet, I would give it my name. - If I were a bird, I could fly. I'm not a bird.

(unlikely to happen)

(untrue in the present) (Giving advice)

- If I were you, I'd try harder.

164



The Third Conditional

المالة الشرطية الثالثة



Past perfect

might) + have + P.P.

" يُعبر الحالة الثالثة عن حدث مستحيل أو ندم أو انتفاد لحدث في الماضي.

If I had locked the car, it wouldn't have been stolen.

Il didn't lock it.;

. If he had behaved well, the teacher wouldn't have punished him.

(He didn't behave well.),

Check Point 2

Choose the correct	answer	from	a,	b,	C	or	d	
--------------------	--------	------	----	----	---	----	---	--

- If it today, we won't go to the park.
 - a) rained
- b) 'll rain
- c) rains
- d) had rained
- If you mix hydrogen and oxygen, you water.
 - a) get
- b) got

- c) would get
- d) will get
- If you had told me about your problem earlier, I you.
 - a) helped
- b) would have helped c) would help
- d) will help
- He isn't here. But if he were here, he you.
 - a) will meet
- b) would meet
- c) can meet
- d) would have met
- Mhat if you found a burglar in your house?
- a) will you do b) you would do e) would you do d) you do
- 6 If you are late, a taxi.
 - a) would take
- b) should take
- c) take
- d) will take
- If I use the computer for a long time, I always a headache.
 - a) have
- b) will have
- c) would have
- d) had
- If you things properly, you wouldn't have got into a mess.
 - a) had planned
- b) planned
- c) plan
- d) have planned
- What would have happened if the passenger
- her mobile phone?

- a) didn't have
- b) doesn't have
- c) had not had
- d) won't have
- If the tree had fallen down, it the road. Thank God.
 - - d would have blocked

- a) will block
- b) may block
- c) would block

Unless - Without - In case of

لولم Unless

فعل الشرط (جملة مثبتة) he had phoned me جواب الشرط (جملة مثبتة أو منفية)

I wouldn't have visited him

In case of في حالة Without

noun/ v-ing In case of emergency الطوارئ, call the police. Without your apology, I won't speak to you again.

But for الولا (n)

But for Hany's illness, he'd have got the job.

- بمكن استخدام (Unless) بدلًا من (If) في كل الحالات:

- Unless you help me, I won't finish the work.
- Unless he were a doctor, he wouldn't save the patient.
- Unless he had found a fly in his soup, he wouldn't have complained to the manager. بمكن استخدام (In case of) في حالة الشرط المثبت.
- In case of bad weather, the wedding will be held indoors.

- بعكن استخدام (but for - without) في حالة الشرط المنفى.

- Without the firemen's efforts, the house would have been burnt.

العظ استخدام in case بدون of.

- Take this money in case you need it.

في حالة/ ريما (سعها جملة)

Extra Points

- يمكن استخدام (بشرط provided (that)/providing - on condition that

و(طالما as long as) بدلًا من (١١) كالأتي:

- . Provided you study harder, you will come first in the test.
- . You can have my car as long as you have a driving licence.

- يمكن استخدام (Should) بدلًا من (II) في الحالتين الأولى والثانية وبعدها الفاعل ثم المصدر:

- Should he receive my call, he will (would) come immediately.

- يمكن استخدام (Were) بدلًا من (١١) في الحالة الثانية فقط.

- If I were younger, I'd play football with you.
- Were I younger, I'd play football with you.

• إذا كان فعل الجملة الأساسي فعلًا آخر غير (were) نستخدم (were) ثم الفاعل ثم (المصدر + ١٥).

- If it rained, the match would be postponed.
- Were it to rain, the match would be postponed.

• يمكن أن نستخدم (Had) بدلًا من (If) في الحالة الثالثة.

- If he had played well, he would have won.
- Had he played well, he would have won.

Check Point 3

Choose t	he	correct	answer	from	a,	b,	c	or	d:
_		COLICE	and it ca	TT CATE	249		-	O.K.	

- I had been so tired, I might have realised what was happening.
 - a) If
- b) Without
- c) In case of
- d) Unless
- he had a calculator, he would have answered quickly.
 - a) If

b) Were

- c) Had
- d) Unless
- him today, he would know what happened.
 - a) If she meets

b) Were she to meet

c) Unless she met

d) Had she met

H he he	en cleverer he woul	dn't have made that s	illy mistake.
a) Should	b) Hadn't	c) Had	(i) II
5 He took some f	ood with him	there were no rest	aurants in the area.
a) in case	b) if	c) unless	d) but for
6your	help, I would have f		
a) In case of	-	c) Unless	d) But for
7 he ha	d enough money, he	wouldn't buy his nee	ds.
a) Without	b) If	c) Unless	d) In case
8 Should he	his friends, he	would invite them to	his birthday party.
	b) meets		d) had met
9 this i	number with you in o	case you need it later.	
	b) keep		d) keep you
		go to work on feasts.	
a) In case	b) Without	c) If	d) In case of
1			



لتجنب بعض الأخطاء الشائعة ادخل على

	Grammar E	Xercises	
Choose the correct ans	wer from a, b, c or d:		
If I feel thirsty, I			
	b) would drink		d) drank
2 If you har	der, you'd get higher m	arks.	20,000
a) worked	b) work	c) had worked	d) will work
3 If I had had my mobi	le yesterday, I	you.	a) will work
a) would contact		b) will contact	
c) would have contact	eted	d) contacted	
If I hear any news, I	you.	,	
a) would phone	b) phoned	c) phone	d) will phone
5 If we didn't have a c	ar, we it diff	icult to get there in	time
a) would find	b) will find	c) may find	d) would have four
6 If people lived on the	e moon, they	tired and bored	(i) Would have is
a) would have been	b) would be	c) will be	A)
7 If you press this swit	ch, the computer	on on	d) are
a) would come	b) would have come	C) comes	
	a, mound have come	c) comes	d) came
168			

mo	ney in the street 1		UNITLA
If I found a) found	ney in the street, I would b) find	take it to the police	
a) found	ive us heat and the	c) had found	Year or a second
	The state of the s	Owner.	d) will find
a) wouldn't die	be repeal at the tar	c) would die	
Ali would act in t	b) will die he school play if he b) would be	good at any	d) may die
a) had been	b) would be	c) will be	
of If she	she would have attended	the party	d) were
1 100	- / Had HIVIII		
They would have	b) had invited run fast they l	and knowers	d) had been invited
without	unless	they were	late
If Ramy	b) unless the businessman, he w b) hadn't met	Ouldo's t	d) in case of
a) didn't meet	b) hadn't met	thave got the jo	ob.
m If you	b) hadn't met any discussion group, the b) had joined	e rules e	d) hasn't met
a) joined	b) had joined	are more or les	s the same
of If I W	ith people I didn't know	c) will Join	d) join
a) were	b) am	ory well, I would nev	er be rude to them
M If I had known th	hat you were joining the	c) had been	d) will be
a) will join	b) would join	iscussion group, I	too. I love birds!
If I need advice	about my life. I usually	e) would have join	ed d) joined
a) would talk	will talk	0) 1	
a) has	b) had s horror films, she	outd buy a new mobile	phone.
If Nihal watches	s horror films, she	c) nad nad	d) will have
a) didn't sleep	b) wouldn't sleep	at night.	
20 Ali tl	ne news if he wanted to le	c) does not sleep	d) hadn't slept
a) would watch	he news if he wanted to ki	now what was happen	ing in the world.
c) will watch		b) would have wa	tched
	her mother if sl	d) can watch	
a) will help	b) won't bale	ne has too much to do.	
If I h	b) won't help	c) would help	d) helps
a) will practice	nard, I will become really	good at playing baske	tball.
If my brother b	b) would practise	c) practise	d) practised
a) would -	ad a lot of money, he	it all on music	and clothes.
Fhab	b) will spend	c) would have spe	ent d) spends
a) will	fishing if he finishes all	his work before the w	eekend.
	had aces		(I) is going
Cit II you	no money you ca	in still have some fun.	
", would have	b) are having	c) had	d) have

57 What	you had lost your ph	b) had you done		
n) will was do	What if you had lost your phot			
a) will you do	dona	d) did you do		
Makamanal	cone	rest media if he read	the article.	
n) will know	b) would know	c) knew	d) would have kno	
28 If metal is heated,	i) Would kno			
a) will expand		c) would expand	d) expands	
State L.	1 1	lot of money.		
a) works	h) worked	e) had worked	d) has worked	
If they	primitive in their wo	rk, they'd achieve better r	esults.	
a) can't	b) hadn't	e) weren't	d) didn't	
II If Hisham	with us, he would	I have a good time.		
a) would come	b) had come	e) would have come	d) came	
If Hady read the s	orticle carefully be	understand it bet	ter.	
a) would	b) will	e) won't	d) wouldn't	
	hard, I would get hig			
	b) to study		d) studying	
	en so fast, she			
		c) would have had	d) wouldn't have	
manus.	ay for the vase, if I			
	· ·	c) broke	d) was breaking	
		the correct po	_	
		c) will have		
	umbrella		,	
a) in case			d) without	
		ı again and aga		
a) try	b) tries	c) tried	d) had tried	
	ad much time, they w	ould have studied better.	a) into tive	
a) Were	b) Had	c) If	d) Have	
	ork, she would have		d) Have	
a) Unless	b) If	c) As long as	d) But for	
	to 100°C, it evapor		u) But for	
a) is boiled	b) boils	c) boiled	d) will boil	
		gh, he would have bought	that can	
a) been	b) had	c) had been		
		be rich and a ne	d) were	
a) bought	b) buy	c) will buy		
a) bought	w, ouy	c) will buy	d) buys	

to the	summer house, if you	Want to Issue	
d	b) Going	c) Win	air.
111	mile et le co. m. willing is	15.5	d) Shall go
of the theen	b) Going onger legs, he would h b) were ill and the i	e) but	c,
a follen	ill and the i	N. L	d) had had
of It I hadre	b) missed	av by I might have g	of the job
a) madeenms	true, she would	I have b	d) would miss
of ther dicarde	b) hadn't come	a nave been happy.	world illisa
a) had come	b) hadn't come ng makes you tired, you b) Without	c) had been come	d) hadn't been come
M. Valage	b) Without	a can walk.	t been come
- 1 1 11116		A I III CALLAN CALL	d) If
a) has put	vater in the freezer, it w	would have turned into it	ee.
a) has put	ller, they would have to	c) had put	d) puts
Mad been	ller, they would have to b) were	iken me in the team vest	erday
a) had been	W/ WOIC	c) have been	d) hadn't been
(0	nen General	EVand	
	pen General	LACICISES (Gran	nmar)
Choose the correct	answer from a, b, c o	or d;	
I'm going home	now because all the wo	ork	
a) has been done	b) will be done	c) had been done	d) are done
We will make a r	nove as soon as the tra	in	a) are done
	b) stopped		d) has stopped
Rameses II	over ancient Egy	pt for more than fifty ve	ears.
a) was ruling	b) ruled	c) have ruled	d) had ruled
	on holiday, he lay		and thing
a) was	b) was being		d) is
5 She let the childs	ren to play.		
	b) to go out	c) go out	d) that they went out
6 I wanted to know	V	-/ 6- 4	, , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,
a) how much did	the car cost?	b) how much the car	costs?
c) how much the		d) how much had the	
After he	at the airport, he re	alized that he had forgott	en his passport at home.
a) had arrived	b) was arriving	e) has arrived	d) arrived
Amira looks von	tired. She	the flat for a long time.	
w Cleaned	1 \	a) has been cleaning	d) had been cleaning
I Suggest	b) was cleaning for them to answe	Lafora gotting in touch	with them again.
TO VIIII to		1 4 - 41104	d) you wait
My fath	b) you waiting	e) to wait	
a) buy	b) you waiting afford a nev	v car.	d) to buying
ouy	b) to buy	c) buying	
			Q 171

Communication Skills

حا لمهادات بالتفصيل برجي الرجوع إلى ملحق السراجعة.

Language Functions

Giving warnings

القيام بتحذيرات

- · Be careful!
- If I were you, I wouldn't
- Mind you don't

- · Don't do that or
- · Make sure you are not
- Watch out!

Writing: An email Giving Warnings

Write an email to your friend telling him about what you think about the advantages and disadvantages of mobile phones.



From : Esmat
To : Aisha

Subject : Mobile phones

Dear Aisha,

Nowadays, the mobile phone plays an important role in our lives, which brings many benefits to us but also contains some disadvantages.

Generally, the mobile phone will bring about a lot of advantages. First of all, the mobile phone is considered the quickest means of communication in our daily life, we can contact easily with our friends and our relatives wherever by calling or sending messages. Second, the mobile phone is also a means of entertainment for people. We can listen to music and play games or mobile phones. Moreover, by using the latest apps for smartphones, we can access to the internet to watch films and check our profiles in social networks and update our status wherever we are Finally, if we have a smartphone in hand, our studying becomes more effective such as look up dictionary, find out many sources of reference on the internet which is useful for studying.

On the other hand, the mobile phone has also many disadvantages. First, telephone used becomes addicted to their mobile phone if they depend on it. Moreover, the ability of human communication is limited if the mobile phone is present in some events such as class meetings or on the bus. The use of mobile phones too much will waste their time. It does not only affect study results, making students distracted but also it is a cause of disease of the eyes. Finally, we shouldn't use the mobile phone while we are driving because it can lead to traffic accidents.

Love, Esmat

1720

Skills EXercises

- Write an essay of about (150) words on one of the following:
 - The advantages and the disadvantages of the internet.
 - How we can protect our children from the disadvantages of modern technology.
- (2 A) Translate into Arabic:
 - 1. Modern technology plays an important role in the way people communicate with each other. Actually, it has made the world like a small village.
 - 2. In some countries, children are banned from using social networking sites until they are eighteen. Parents have to make sure of that.
 - 3. Some governments block harmful sites to protect their citizens from the drawbacks of the internet sites.
 - Modern technology is a blessing if it is well used and it is a curse if it is misused.
 It is our responsibility to benefit from it and avoid its harms.
 - Egypt was the first country outside Europe to win the Men's Youth World Handball Championship in 2019. The team was honoured by the president.
 - 6. The government is building one of the biggest solar power stations in Aswan. It is expected to produce about 90% of the electricity produced by the High Dam.
 - B) Translate into English:
 - ١- تعمل شركات الكمبيوتر على تطوير برامج حماية الأطفال من التصفح غير الآمن للإنترنت وذلك لحمايتهم من أضرار المواقع المسيئة.
 - ٢- هل نوافق على وضع قوانين لمواقبة وحظر مواقع الإنترنت وصفحات التواصل الاجتماعي؟
 - ٣- بختلف الناس في نظرتهم لتطور الاتصالات فمنهم من يرى أنها تطور طبيعي ومنهم من يظن أن أضرارها تفوق مزاياها.
 - ٤- يستغل المتجود مواقع التواصل الاجتماعي في الإعلان عن متجاتهم بسبب جذبها للملايين من الناس.
 - ه- بجب أذ يشارك المجتمع في جهود تطوير المدارس و تزويدها بكل الوسائل الحديثة التي تجعلها مناسبة للتطور التكنولوجي الكبير.
 - ٦- يعنقد الخبراء أن استخدام الشباب المفرط للتليفون المحمول يؤثر على صحتهم وممارستهم للهوايات المفيدة.

Enrich your Vocabulary

banned	ممنوع	drawbacks	عبوب
blessing	ننمة	efforts	جهرد
block	يحجب	excessive	المفرط
browsing	التصفح	means	الوسائل
curse	لعنة	solar	



TEST 6 Based on Unit 14

Cl	100se the correct	t answer from a, b, c oi	لمزيد من الامتد	
	Without the rese	answer from a, b, c of	ra:	
	a) died	uers' efforts, many peop	le	
2	Many countries	b) are dying	c) have died	d) would have died
1	J - Carretico	have made laws to han o	moking in niac	299
3	The trainer had t	b) general	e) public	d) empty
	a) reward	Munir from the	basketball team as he isn'	t very fit for the match
				d) finance
	a) will visit	ne, I my friend	ls in Dubai.	
5	The medical test	would have visited	c) would visit	d) visited
	a) applied	b) etteined	was drug and h	ne was punished.
	4 4	o anamen	Clattacked	d) addicted
	IIIOU, 1	to bed to relax	It's my habit	
7	I toucl	b with my base of the	c) 'd have gone	d) 'll go
	a) gained	b) kept	hose family moved to Au	stralia.
8	If Heba	here sheld be	c) lost	d) missed
	a) is	here, she'd help me w	ith the homework.	
9	Alexander the G	reat is ballound to I	c) had been	d) has been
	a) drawn	b) defeated	over a huge en	npire.
10	Had he not had	enough money, he	c) conquered	d) ruled
	a) can't buy	b) couldn't home	a car.	
11	The word "sena	ration" is an entarge to	c) couldn't have bought	d) can't have bought
	- nord sopa	ration" is an antonym to b) download) the word	
12	I to et	udy harder, I'd achieve	c) type	d) exclusion
	a) If			
102			c) Had	d) Should
13	a) suffered	noke cigarettes, their he		
		b) suffers	c) will suffer	d) would suffer
14	11 you		ou will eventually achieve	e it.
	a) are setting	E. C.	c) sets	d) set
15		oillion dollars, I		
	a) will travel		b) would have travelled	L of
	c) would travel		d) travelled	1
16 If you me you needed a ride, I would have left earlier.				
	a) had told	b) told	c) tell	d) telling
617	740			

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

The moon orbits the Earth. When it orbits, it travels in a circle around the Earth. There is a force between the Earth and the moon called gravity. Because of gravity. larger objects pull smaller ones toward them. Earth is larger than the moon, so the Earth pulls on the moon. At the same time, the Earth is being pulled by the sun. The sun is larger than the Earth. The balance between those two "pulls" is what keeps the moon in orbit around the Earth. People say the moon shines. However, the moon does not actually have any light of its own. What we see as its light is really the sun's light reflecting off of the moon. As the moon orbits the Earth, the Earth orbits the sun. We see different amounts of light on the moon depending on its position. We call the changes in the moon's appearance Lunar phases. From one new moon to the next new moon is one complete lunar cycle.

It takes the moon between 27 and 28 days to complete an orbit around the Earth. The moon's orbit is measured from one new moon to the next new moon. It starts in the west and moves toward the east.

To complete one full orbit, the moon travels about 1,423,000 miles. The moon travels very fast. It moves at 2,288 miles per hour.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

b) appeal

The moon orbits th	ne Earth and the Ear	th orbits the sun becau	se of
a) appearance		b) reflection	
c) gravity		d) position	
People are wrong	when they think that		
a) the Earth pulls	the moon	b) the moon is	smaller than the sun
c) the earth is pull	ed by the sun	d) the moon shi	
The two spheres w	which are being pulle	ed by the force of gravi	ity are
a) the moon and the	ne sun	b) the Earth and	d the moon
c) the sun and the	aneth	d) the Earth and	d gravity
The antonym of th	ne word "pull" is	11	d) influence
a) push	b) appeal	c) affect	G / 11111111111111111111111111111111111

B) Answer the following questions:

- Why does Earth pull on the moon instead of the other way around?
- What's really happening when the moon is said to shine?
- Which moves faster, your family car or the moon?
- What are the two pulls that keep the moon in orbit around the Earth?

25 Translate into Arabic:

Mass media - represented in television, the radio and the press - have a vital effect on everyone. They form the public opinion of any nation.

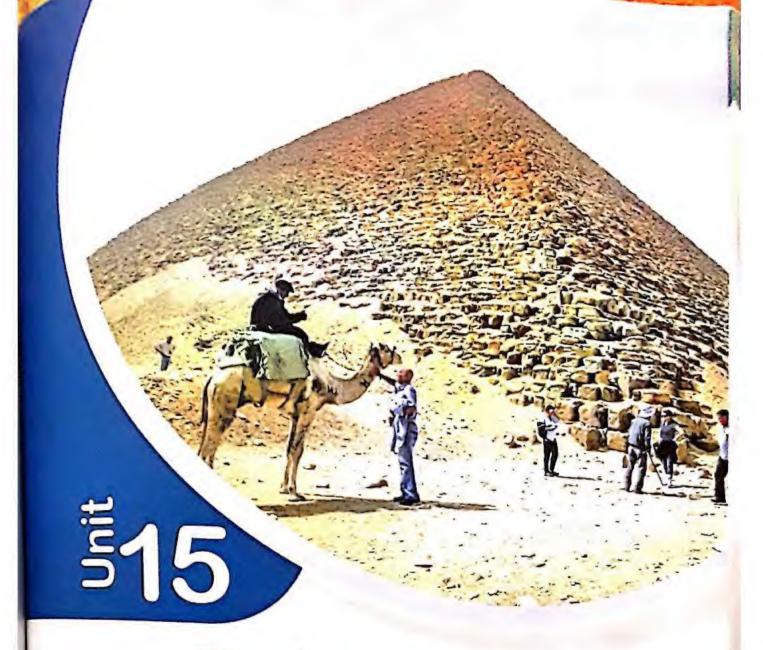
26 Translate into English:

- لواستطاع كل فرد القيام بدوره على أكمل وجه لتقدمت مصر في كل المجالات ولأصبحنا من أرقى الأمم فتنمية اللادلاتنحقق دون الجهد والصبر.

27 Write an essay of about 180 words on the following topic:

The advantages and the disadvantages of the internet.





Tourism today

Objectives

Listening : Listening to identify speakers and to interpret information

Grammar : Present necessity and lack of necessity

Reading Reading for specific information, guessing the meanings

of unknown words

Critical thinking: Understanding the importance of tourism

Functions . Using idioms; making compromises and coming to

agreements

Writing : Writing a formal email

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

accommodation (n)	إقامة	mass (n) (adj)	کلة/جماعی
block (v) (ed)	يسد/يعوق	package tour (n)	الله جماعية الم
cathedral (n)	كاتدرائية/كنيسة كبيرة	particular (adj)	غاص/ محدد
culture (n)	ثقافة	pretend (v) (ed)	يَدْعِي/يتظاهر
cultural (adj)	ثقافى	reputation (n)	in
employ (v) (ed)	يوظف	staff (n)	طاقم العمل
employer (n)	صاحب العمل	travel agent (n)	ر رکیل سیاحی
employee (n)	موظف	visitor (n)	ذائو
fixed (adj)	ثابت/محدد	wear away (v)	يلى (يؤدي إلى التآكل)/ يتآكل

Vocabular	N	tening
A ocas	On	Listening

add (v) (ed)	يضيف
ancient (adj)	قديم/ أثرى
arrange (v) (d)	يرتب
arrangement (n)	ترتيب
beach (n)	بلاچ/شاطئ ممهد
customer (n)	زبون/عميل
especially (adv)	بخاصة

	,
essential (adj)	خروزى
organise (v) (d)	ينظم
relaxing (adj)	مربح للأعصاب
sail (v) (ed)	يحر
souvenir (n)	الذكار
tourism (n)	مباحة
tourist (n) (adj)	مانع/مباحي
travel agency (n)	مْرَكة (سياحية/ سفريات)
trip (n)	الحلة لغرض معين

Vocabulary On R	eading	holiday maker (n) industry (n)	سائح/ قائم بإجازة
air travel (n)	السفر جوًّا مقال	industrial (adj)	صناعة صناعي
_{article} (n) _{coast} (n)	ساحل	local (adj) meal (n)	محلى
_{compare} (v) (d) _{crowded} (adj)	یقارن مزدحم	the Mediterranean (n) ordinary (adj)	وجبة البحر المتوسط
currency	عملة	popular (adj)	عادی مشهور/محبوب
damage (v) (d) (n) destination (n)	يتلف/ تلف وجهة سفر	popularity (n) resort (n)	شهرة
disadvantages (n)	عيوب	Season (=)	متجع/مصيف

Critical Thinking, Communication & Workbook Vocabulary

earner (n)

golf course (n)

season (n)

traffic (n)

stone floor (n)

art (n)	فن	horse-riding (n)	الفروسية/ركوب الخيل
beliefs (n)	معتقدات	interest (n)	
benefit (v) (ed) (n)	يستفيد/ فائدة	involve (v) (d)	اهتمام يشرك/يتضمن
cleaners (n)	عمال نظافة	nearby (adj)	ي رو بارد قريب
ecotourism (n) effect (n)	السياحة البيئية	organisation (n)	ر مۇســـة/منظمة
ffect (v) (ed)	تأثير	public transport (n)	النقل العام
ffeetive (adj)	يؤثر على	share (v) (d)	بشارك
foreign (adj)	مؤثر/ فعَّال	society (n)	مجتمع
(adj)	أجنبي		

Focus on Vocabulary

accommodation	ບກຸ	a place to stay in
block	بسد بعوق	stop or get in the way of something
cathedral	كاتدرب	• a large, important church
culture	512	the beliefs, behaviour, art and ideas of a society
employ	يوطف	• give work to people
fixed	ئابت/محدد	arranged in advance and not able to be changed
include	يشمل/ينضمن	contain something as part of something else
mass	كلة/جماعي	a large number grouped together
package tour	رحلة جماعية	 holidays arranged by a travel company which include travel, accommodation and sometimes food for a fixed price
particular	خاص/محدد	• special or important
pretend	يَدُّعِي/ ينظاهر	behave as if something is true when it is not
reputation	i	the opinion people have of someone
staff	طاقم العمل	a group of people who work for an organisation
travel agent	وكيل سياحي	someone whose job is to help people make travel arrangements
visitor	ذائر	a person who visits a place or a person
wear away	يىلى (بۇدى إلى الناكا)/بناكل	become damaged after repeated use

Expressions (2) Idioms

g five-star hotel	فندق خمس نجوم
as quickly as possible	باسرع ما يمكن
at its best	في أفضل صورة
do damage to	يسبب تلفًا لـ
for/ at a fixed price	بسعر ثابت
go horse-riding	يمارس الفروسية
go on visits with	يذهب في زيارات مع

make formal	
make money out of	المسام ملعجي
make sure	يجنى مالًا من
take a trip to	يتأكد
take it easy	يقوم برحلة إلى
value for money	يسترخى/يتمهل قيمة مناسبة للنقود

Phrases Prepositions

add to	ىضىف ك
arrange for	, تې ل
benefit from	يستفيد من
compared to	مقارنة بـ

effect on تأثیر علی essential for خروری لـ sail past

Words, Synonyms and Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	المضاد Antonym	
block	يعوق	hinder	unblock يريل العوائق	
employ fixed	يوظف	hire	ي فصل من العمل fire	
	ثابت/ محدد	settled	flexible مرن	
pretend	يَدَّعِي/ يتظاهر	assume	deny ينكر	
reputation	سمعة	fame	unimportance/ shame دم أهمية/ خزى	
^{arrange} ^{essential}	يرتب	organise	disorganise یفسد/یخل بنظام	
crowded	ضرورى	necessary	optional اختیاری/عارض	
ordinary	مزدحم	busy	empty فارغ	
ary	عادى	common	غريب strange	

Notes on Vocabulary

souvenir	memory	present	prize
My grandfather	buy souvenirs from K has problems with his nt memories of our ho	han el-Khalili. memory. He is over 70 liday in Luxor and Asw	، مادی) ر (شیء معنوی) van.
Mary got a lot o	of presents on her last	birthday. oject he did at school.	سابقة/منافسة)

coast	shore	beach	bank
	y tourist villages along ed the shore after a lon	the north coast of the F	لاطئ (جزء من اليابسة محازٍ لحافة اا
Cult	sit relaxed under umbro		رج (شاطئ ممهد) غة (نهر أو بحيرة)

wear (wore -	worn)		
wear away	يتآكل/ يَبلَى	wear out	يلى ولا يصلح للاستخدام
wear off	يختفي أثره أويزول بالتدريج	wear down	ينى ولا يصلح للرستحدم بنهك/يهزم/يتلف
wear on	(يمر ببطء) للوقت		بهدايهراايس
wear on	(يمر ببطء) للوقت		

- 1. The floor of the office wore away as it was very old.
- 2. He will be OK after the effect of the drug wears off.
- 3. I feel bored, the time wears on.
- 4. My shirt wore out, it can't be used again.
- 5. In the chess game I wore down Nader and beat him.

a five-star hotel

(الاحظ استخدام صيغة المفرد star) بسبب استخدامها كصفة للاسم بعدها مثل التعبيرات التالية: a two-week holiday

a five-star hotel

car factories

فندق خمسة نجوم مصانع سيارات

currency

note

coin

currency

US dollars are considered common currency in international trade. عملة (بدون تحديد شكل) note

Banks only exchange notes and traveller's cheques.

coin

The referee tossed a coin to see who should start the match with.

share

divide

share

۱- یشترك (نی شیء) بدون تقسیم ۲- یتشارك/ یشارك (شیء - رأی- شعور)

My brother shares a room with one of his colleagues at university. We shared the pizza between the four of us.

divide

۱- یقسم/ینقسم ۲- یقسم علی رقم (فی الریاضیات)

The children were divided into three teams.

Thirty divided by six is five.

Check Point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: Loss of is a natural part of old age.

a) life

b) souvenir

c) monument

d) memory

In the second half, Al Ahli team wore the other team and won the match.

a) off

b) down

c) on

d) out

After the Second World War, Germany was into two separate countries. a) divided

b) shared

c) united

d) built

MILE		tries in the Europea	in Union.
The euro is the	single of cou	c) currency	d) form
a) note	h) coin	of t	the small lake.
The boy jumped	b) coin I in and swam to the o	c) beach	d) harbour
a) coast	b) bank	1 became	more and more tired
	b) bankk and, as the day woreb) away	c) on	d) out
a) off I'll keep this ph	oto as a of n	ny trip to Luxor.	d) notice
	1 1		
If children playa) off	football for too long, b) out	c) on	d) away



Listening Text ())

Speaker 1:

I'm here for a week with my wife and children. I've wanted to come here since I learnt about Egypt at school. We're staying near Cairo and while we're here, we're going to see the Pyramids at Giza, the Great Sphinx and other ancient sites. My children



have to study ancient history at school next year, so this trip will be very interesting for them. We must buy souvenirs⁽¹⁾ for our friends while we're here, and the children are hoping to spend a day or two on the beach.

ندکاران سیاحیة (1) -----

إنامة (2)

Speaker 2:

فاقم العمل (3)

I'm the manager of a travel agency in Alexandria. I arrange accommodation⁽²⁾ (4) and trips for foreign visitors to Egypt. Of course, some times of the year are busier than others for us. There are parts of the year when my staff⁽³⁾ and I have to work twelve hours a day for six days a week, then other times (6) are quieter, which means that we don't have to work such long hours. I enjoy my job especially when customers say that they've enjoyed the trips we've organised. Sometimes I pretend⁽⁴⁾ to be a tourist and go on the trips myself, because we must always make such that the customers are getting value for money⁽⁵⁾. It is essential for our reputation we look after tourists well. We mustn't forget that tourism is very important for Egypt.

speaker 3: the here with my sister – we're sailing down the Nile from Luxor to the here with my sister – we're sailing down the Nile from Luxor to the here. I'm here the from Luxor to aswan. It's been a fantastic journey so far. The views from the boat are Aswan. It we've learnt a lot about the life and culture of Egyptian (8) wonderful We've sailed past the temples of Edfu and Kom Ombo. We're finding it very people. We refinding it very just to get up or go to bed at particular times. don't need to get up or go to bed at particular times – we can just take it easy. We have to be back in Cairo on Friday in time to catch our flight back to England.

Reading Text

Tourism today

People have visited Egypt ever since Greek and Roman times, but modern tourism began when an Englishman, Thomas Cook, arranged the first package tour(1) in 1841. Package tours are holidays arranged by a travel company which include travel, accommodation and sometimes food for a fixed(2) price.



Mass⁽³⁾ tourism first became popular in the 1960s, when air travel became cheaper, and today tourism is a huge business. Millions of tourists are carried by air to destinations all over the world. Countries on

(2) تباد (2)

the Mediterranean coast attract millions of tourists every summer!

(3) selec

Countries make a lot of money out of tourism, but there are also disadvantages. For example, about one hundred people visit Notre Dame cathedral(4) in Paris every minute. Their feet wear away(5) the stone floors. The buses waiting for the tourists produce pollution that damages the outside of the building.

كالدرائية (4) يلی (5)

پـد/يعوق (6)

During the tourist season, many of the world's great cities are very (8) difficult to live in. Try shopping in Prague or Florence in the middle of summer! Tourists with cameras block(6) your way. Shopping is impossible!

For Egypt, tourism is the second most important earner of foreign currency after oil. The tourist industry employs (7) thousands of people such as travel agents, hotel staff and building transfer or totals and roads will have to building Workers. If more tourists visit in the future, new hotels and roads will have to be built and new parks and resorts(8) will need to be planned.

Notes on some sentences from (Listening & Reading) Texts

The children are hoping to spend a day or two o	n the beach
ان الأمل يراود الشخص لفترة وتنقضى ولا ينساه طوال هذه الفترة. Some times of the year are busier than others for than ejel كانت الصفة تنتهى بـ لا تقلب إلى than وإذا كانت الصفة تنتهى بـ لا تقلب إلى We've learnt a lot about the life and culture of the There is no life on Mars.	يه hope لا يستخدم في الاستمرار إلا في حالة r us then other times are quicker
He is leading a happy life in his new villa.	ينخدم كلمة life للحياة عمومًا.
The life and culture of the Egyptian people.	مخدم كلمة a life لنوع معين من الحياة.
	and an all the life and

المحدم كلمة the life لحياة شخص معين أو مجموعة معينة المحدم كلمة Package tours include travel, accommodation and sometimes food for a fixed price والمحدود عليها على المحدم المحد

Solution New hotels and roads will have to be built and new parks and resorts will need to be planned.

.will need to و will have to كمبنى للمجهول بعد be + P.P. و will need to.

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

The first thing to live in.	I think about when I go	on holiday is to arra	ange for , apl
a) educationSitting on the b	each under an umbrella	ion c) foundation is really	d) fountain
a) tiring	b) annoying	c) exhausting	
For no a) popular	reason, my friend l	eft his job at the bar	d) relaxing nk,
	of the	c) particular	d) general
a) staff	b) cliff	are on pany the stude	ents on the school trip.
Some countries	depend on beca	c) stuff tuse it is very import	d) stiff tant for their national inco
a) tours	b) culture	c) tourism	d) terrorism

Ĺ	crem schools in Egypt	a very good	20 th	
0	STEM schools in Egypt	b) destination	c) invitation	highly-skilled teachers
	Lieves got into the	nouse by		(I) reputation
1	mending	b) preventing	c) position	the electricity company
	Tourism industry can	million	S of people	d) protecting
8	agents.		or people such as	workers, hotel staff and
	a) employ tourism as	b) rent	c) imple	
L	a) employ tourism as	we know it today f	iret har-	d) apply
9	a) Mass	b) Class	c) Press	in the 1960s.
	1) Mass	OUT Way to s	chool -	d) Press
	A fallen tree was	b) dividing	chool, so we were la	ite.
	a) repairing	our and ideas of a	c) splitting	d) blocking
	The art, beliefs, behavi	our and ideas of a p	particular society or	group of people are their
	a facilitate t	h) culture	-V	
	a) industry	government will 1	c) agriculture	d) commerce
	We hope that the new	government will de	o its best for citizen	s to enjoy a
	price for food.	b) minud		
	a) fitted			
	The steps leading up t		Petra, in Jordan, h	ave been by
	many visitors over hur	The second secon		
	a) destroyed			
1	You don't have to pay			
ļ	a) consisted			
E	The Red Sea	is famous for its	fish, corals and bea	utiful wildlife.
	a) bank	b) beach	c) coast	d) ocean
1	It is that i	my uncle wears his	glasses when he dr	ives — he can hardly see
	without them!			
	a) essential	b) unwise	c) silly	d) interesting
1	The family house doub	oled in	over only two years	
	01:		a) curve	4)
18	Different countries use	different kinds of	money, which are ca	illed
	a) coins	b) currencies	c) dollars	d) notes
li	Sharm El Cl. 111	b) currences	for tourists who enjo	d) generation
	al sonie d'	b) destination	c) circulation	d) generation
I	The Sanitation			
-	of mo	obile phones and in	o) security	d) immunity
1	a) fertility Oil and natural gas are	b) popularity	in Sauc	di Arabia.
4	Oil and natural gas are a) owner	the biggest export	c) earner	d) dealer
			- \ aartie	

Tourists go to Khan el-	Khalili to buy	for their frie	ends.
a) memories	k) souvenire	c) prizes	d) icebergs
a) memories	b) souveills	v value	money.
We paid little money f	or this car. It's reali	c) in	d) about
a) of	b) for	C) III	fixed price that
24 A tour is	a holiday arranged	by a company for a	rixed price that includes
your hotel and travel.			al) modulos
a) backache			
Compared			
a) in	b) for	c) to	d) from
The are the	he people who go o	n tours to enjoy them	iselves.
a) money makers	b) pop makers	c) troublemakers	d) holiday makers
27 None of us are close f	riends, but we all	an interes	t in sport.
a) share		c) split	
28 The is the			
		c) bank	
29 People usually go to			
a) transport	b) transplant	c) police	d) travel
30 The supermarket was	so crowded with	that I couldn'	t get everything I world
a) guests	b) customers	c) hosts	d) passangers
31 Tourism enables a lot	of countries to	a lot of mon	ev passengers
a) make	b) win	c) lose	d) contrins
we stayed at a five	hotel du	ring our journey in D.	oria
a) star	b) stars	c) ctar'e	4)
iour style of writing	makes it easy even	for	Assessment American
a) ordinary	b) sophisticated	c) intelligent	ole to understand.
Lou Silouiu	YOUR WORK IN OR	der to be successful	
a) recognise	b) specialise	c) conjulia-	1
Some people prefer t	0 use 1	ranchort rather the	A CONTRACTOR OF THE PARTY OF TH
a fondial	D) nauonai	Cloublic	** *
The state of the s	cai beoble and ones	n t damage the	
a) Curative tourism	b) Ecotourism	c) Mass to	onment. d) Package tourism
37 They spent a month a	at a fashionable ski	c) wass tourism	d) Package tourism
a) resources	b) resourceful	in Switz	
38 Egyptian monuments	millio	of town	d) way
a) admire	h) attract	on tourists every y	ear.
	iving great care to	c) attack	d) attend
The government is g to factory owners.	irms sical cale (0	developmen	t providing more facilius
a) agricultural	b) cultural	c) form:	7
a, agriconara	,	e) farming	d) industrial

	1 making	Tourism t	Oday
on is popula	ir with young peo	ple as it ac	Unit 15
This cinema is popula Hollywood.	b) forcien	no its it often shows	films made in
Hony a) local miz test	answaring	e) common	dist.
al requiz test		11° 8 1 175 mm = 1	d) bizarre
local The quiz test consists wy grandparen	b) encloses	c) involves	rkrapn.
acit my granoparen	is very often beca	use they live in a	a) reports
a) consists I visit my grandparen a) remote a) remote	n) nearby	c) strange	village.
a) remote My doctor always adv	vises me to	The same of the sa	d) lonely
a) take	b) make	c) do	icel nervous.
We arranged	a car to colle	et us from the airport	d) give
n) in	b) at	c) on	•
My brother is studyin	ig astronomy beca	iuse he has always t	d) for
a) exercise	b) interest	c) practice	d a/an in it.
11) 6,00	<u> </u>	- practice	di harmat
Ope	n General	EXercises (Vo	
hoose the correct ans	wer from a b a	and and	cabulary)
hoose the correct and I	live on the se-	or a;	
My best friend and I	b) block	of flats.	
a) mass		c) street	d) department
Every company man	agement has its ov	wn special	
a) civilisation	b) scent	c) industry	d) culture
4000	ion.	with other	d) culture European countries on the
a) accommodation	b) stay	e) recommendati	on d) dispute
The girl was busily	in colou	ring her drawings, so	she couldn't worch the CI
11) 111100	D) managed	(*) employed	41
The road was closed	by a big	of people who prote	sted against the new factory.
) 510016	D) mass	(1) mace	dly manage
The children sang so	ngs around a	campfire in t	heir garden
") protend	D) protect	c) accent	d) intensive
The fittle boy	on the botto	om step as it was part	v broken
,	h) tripped	a) beales	41
in its place.	about the	kitchen – everything	nas to be perfectly clean and
a) secret	b) private	c) general	d) particular
Sillall host was	near 1	the rocks.	
a) blocked	b) coasted	c) beached	d) honoured
verb "disoras"	se" is an antonym	to the verb "	**
a) damage	b) arrange	c) attract	d) attack
	w) arrange	c) amaci	



1) Necessity

2) Lack of necessity

3) Prohibition



Necessity

الضرورة

Present	Past	Future
have to has to nust	had to	ry for to + Inf.
have got to has got to has got to	no past	It was necessary
need to/needs to	needed to	will need to

- It is necessary for all students to study hard.
- All students must/have to/have got to/need to study hard.
- It was necessary for him to visit Alex.
- He had to visit Alex.

نرورة في الماضي وتم فعلها.

- It will be necessary for the government to build more houses for youth.
- The government will have to build more houses for youth.

must/ have to الفرق بين

تبد must الضرورة الشخصية (ظروف شخصية تضطره لذلك) والشخص يكون موافقًا لهذه الضرورة وراضيًا عنها. انقبد have to ضرورة مفروضة من الخارج ليس لديك اختيار في فعلها في الحاضر أو المستقبل.

- I have to wear a uniform during my work hours.
- I must visit Ramy on Saturday as I promised him.



Must

strong advice:

رصيحة قوية:

- . You must wash your hands before you eat.
- You mustn't make noise as your father is asleep (sleeping).

a warm invitation:

رعوة حارة:

. You must come and see us at the weekend.

a strong reminder to ourselves:

نذكر أنفسنا بضرورة عمل شىء:

- · We must buy souvenirs for our friends here.
- · We mustn't forget that tourism is important.

laws

للقانون ويجب التفرقة بينها وبين have to التى تفيد الضرورة الخارجية:

- · Drivers must stop when the traffic light is red.
- The traffic light is red. You have to stop.

في الجملة الأولى نتحدث عن القانون العام الذي يلتزم به جميع الناس؛ لذلك استخدمنا كلمة drivers، وفي الجملة الثانة نتحدث عن ضرورة مفروضة من الخارج في موقف معين، واستخدمنا الضمير You ولم نتحدث عن القانون ذاته.

(المحوظة) نستخدم need to للأحداث التي يمكن أن تكون ضرورية أو غير ضرورية.

·Hassan needs to go to the bank after he finishes work.

Lack of necessity

عدمالضرورة

Present		Past	Past Future		
don't have to	ď.	didn't have to لم یکن ضروری فعل شیء	sary nf.		be necessary to + Inf.
doesn't have to	ecessary	لم یکن ضروری فعل شیء فلم تفعله needn't have + P.P	necessar; to + Inf.	won't have to	be nec
needn't (to بدون)	isn't ne or to	لم یکن ضروری فعل شیء ولکن تم فعله	wasn't for t	won't need to	won't
don't/doesn't	It isn for	didn't need to	It w		H

- It isn't necessary for her to buy more dresses.
- She doesn't have to/needn't/doesn't need to buy more dresses.
- It wasn't necessary for me to travel abroad.
- I didn't have to travel abroad.
- I needn't have travelled abroad.

مل.	فلم أف	ع. راجاً
, فعلت	ولكنى	بین واجبًا ی _{ک و} اجبًا

Check Point 2

encon romit			
Choose the correct a	inswer from a, b, c or	d:	
You go s	hopping with us, you c	an stay at home if yo	ou want.
	b) mustn't		d) have to
2 You see :			
a) needn't		c) had to	d) shouldn't
3 I get to s	chool before 8:30.		
a) must	b) needn't	c) should	d) have to
	w your passport when		
	b) needn't		d) had to
My father	work today because	it is a holiday.	
a) must	b) doesn't have to	c) has to	d) had to
6 You was	h these fruits. I've alre	ady washed them.	
a) don't have to	b) mustn't	c) don't have	d) need to
7 She take	e a taxi yesterday as it v	was raining heavily.	
a) must	b) doesn't have to	c) had to	d) needn't
8 I wash r	ny hands before eating	. It's very important.	
	b) must		
9 Do you	wear those shoes to we	ork? Are they part of	the dress code?
a) should	b) need	c) must	d) have to
10 Yusuf and Hani	be home by ei	ght. That's a family	rule.
a) might	b) has to	c) have to	

Prohibitio	n	المنع/الحظر/التحريم
It's	banned forbidden prohibited	to park here.

not allowed

1920

Parking is

banned forbidden prohibited not allowed

here.

, you mustn't (can't) park here.

, you aren't allowed to park here.

You are forbidden from parking here.





لتجنب بعض الأخطاء الشائعة ادخل على

Grammar Exercises

Choose the correct	answer from a, b, c or	11.	
a) need to Youe a) mustn't I take	ork such long hours. We b) must at lots of fresh vegetables b) don't have to this book back to the lib	can complete our work c) needn't s because they're good t c) needn't	tomorrow. d) shouldn't for you. d) must
The flight is at 6	in the morning, so we	c) can't	<mark>d</mark>) needn't rly.
	ve at work at 9 sharp. My	c) needn't boss is very strict	d) had to
,	all for the doctor when m	c) have to y father fainted last nig	ht.
We g	ive him our answer today	c) needn't or we'll lose out on the	d) had to e contract.
You I	ohone me at work. We are	en't allowed to receive	d) don't have to personal calls.
a) mustn't	see us talking or they'll	suspect something.	a) needn t
WYOU	come if you don't want to	c) didn't have to	
We fi	b) mustn't inish now as somebody e	c) don't have tolse needs this room.	d) will have to
, uccan f	b) have got to	c) don't have to	d) can't

12	You come	to see us at the weeken	d. We miss you so mu	ich.
	a) mustn't	b) don't have to	c) needn't	d) must
13	We leave 1	now. The train leaves in	five minutes.	
	a) needn't	b) need to	c) don't need to	d) shouldn't
14	We get up	or go to bed at particul	ar times on holidays.	
	a) need to	b) must	c) needn't	d) shouldn't
15	Gamal couldn't repai	r his car, so he	rent one to travel to	his village last week
	a) has to	b) had to	c) must	d) needn't
16		in Britain v		
	a) must	b) needn't	c) shouldn't	d) have to
17		study ancient history		
	a) have to	b) must	c) needn't	d) should
18	We buy so	ouvenirs for our friends		
	a) mustn't	b) must	c) had to	d) didn't have to
19		work 12 hours a d		
	a) mustn't	b) need	c) doesn't have to	d) have to
20	-	ery early on school day		
		b) have to		d) don't have to
2	_	hildren wear		
		b) mustn't		d) doesn't need to
20		e fast in the city centre.		
		b) mustn't		
2.		d too much money. You		
	a) may not	b) needn't	c) can't	d) mustn t
2		that book back to the li		A.C.
	a) have to	b) should		d) can
2		your exams to go to un b) needn't	_	1) have to
	a) can			a) have to
2		hone Mazen. I promise	c) doesn't need to	n as I nau any
	a) must	this train. There's anoth	her one in ten minutes	d) needii t
2		b) don't have to	c) must	d) have to
	a) mustn't	ersity. I appl		u) have to
2		b) didn't have to	c) need to	d) had to
_	a) mustn't	that book. You can born		u) nau to
2		b) shouldn't	c) mustn't	d) can't
	a) needn't	D) Discussion	-/ mastir t	u) can

1940

	To	urism today
speal	so loudly on your makes	UNIT 1
You andn't	b) should c) don't c) don't c) mustn't c) don't	lt's ve
give o	our homework to .L c) don't	have
1110	b) mustn's	d) musta's
had to	c) don's	hext week
My grandianier	b) needn't c) don't b) needn't c) has to b) doesn't need to t to take the chicken	nave to
doesn't have to	D) needn't	in he was young
Drivers h	old a valid driving licence ut	d bod
a) must	b) doesn't need to c) need	operating a more-
forge	t to take the chicken out of the fr	to del vehicle.
don't have to	b) haven't to	eezer. d) have to
Non phor	b) haven't to c) must be him because I have already talk b) have to	n't
lon't have to	b) have a	ked to him
a) don t have to	b) have to c) must	in't
100	Jour voice. We can hear von	a) bad to
al liave to	111 1111151	
We to go	to school tomorrow. It is a publ	in t d) needn't
a) could	b) don't have	ic holiday.
We to bu	b) don't have c) need by any tomatoes. There are lots o	d) mustn't
a) must	b) mustn't c) need plane tickets online, you	f them in the fridge
You can order your	plane tickets - 1:	in't didon't pand
a) don't have to	plane tickets online, you b) mustn't	Use a travel agent
	TOPOIL WILLIAM IN WAIT OF A	0 - 1
a) need to	D) must	1 1
•	But, 30 I Illy sligar v	esterday
a) needii [b) didn't have to	's have a
What a state my sh	oes are in! They repa	i't have to d) mustn't
a) must	b) and	ırıng.
	b) need c) have	re to d) are
al don't I	have visas to visit S	udan?
-on theen	la la manage	ve to d) need
"liell I saw the new	V car I know I	
a) had to buy	b) must have bought c) ne	ed to buy d) can buy
(10)	10 - 14 11 - 11 - 1	tions
a) have to be	ver if you allower all these ques	n't be d) must be
Fahmy is not !	b) needn't be c) ca Heleave early.	n't be
a) must	Heleave early.	
Thor	b) needs to c) ha	s to d) had to
was only on	way to the hotel so I	it.
have to take	b) needs to c) have taken c) m	ust have taken d) had to take
What does All	b) needn't have taken c) m do to get a visa to Cana b) have to	USI Have taken
a) must	do to get a visa to Cana	da?
-3[b) have to c) h	as to
	,	

.::::::	ctor. He a b	ouy c) needn't have bou rilliant student. c) must be	d) back
0,	en Consul E		d) has to be
Choose the correct	जा उवासता -	Xercises (Gram	mar)
Such a Silfi	TICO -		
They spoke quietle	b) to see	c) be seeing	d) see
a) to avoid	y wake up	the children.	u) 300
3 Feta cheese	b) for fear	c) in order not	d) so on
a) is produced	b) for fear in Greece. It's ve	ery popular there.	d) so as not to
Would you mind	b) produces	c) produced	d) is product
a) lend	b) to be also	tomorrow?	d) is producin
5 That was a daller	b) to lend	c) lending	d) lends
	as medi. Toll cook ver	ru.	d) lelius
6 Samy was noting	b) well	c) better	d) good
- Las actilis	ha mon st		u) good
	DI In the work		d) as though
		ir, eggs and milk.	d) as though
	1)) DV	111	d) as
one likes to go ice	-skating the	e winter.	d) as
a) as	b) when	- A . A	d) while
we get	up on time, we could	c) during catch the early train to L	llxor
	WILLIAM TO THE PROPERTY OF THE	0) []	d) Otherwise
Ann said she woul	d go shopping the	day.	d) Offici wisc
a) before	b) past	c) following	d) after
	Communica	tion Skills —	
		وع إلى ملحق المراجعة	لمهارات بالنفصيل يرجى الرج
	Languag	e Functions	
Making compromise	es and coming to an agr		
	s and coming to an agr	reement	نيام بتسويات والتوصل

Writing: A formal email

write a reply to the following email.

: ecotours@help.com

Subject : holiday@help.com

Hi Ecotours,

Hi Ecotodes, 1got your name from one of my friends who's been on one of your trips. I want a holiday in your country lgot your name and damage to the environment. I'm really also interested in your culture and want to find which won't do any damage to the environment. I'm really also interested in your culture and want to find which wo...
out about how people live in Egypt. I'm probably going to come next summer. send me some information as quickly as possible. I can't wait to hear from you.

Bye,

Pete Barton

Reply:

: pete Barton@help.com To : ecotours@help.com From

Subject : Replying to your request Phones

Dear Pete.

We have received your e-mail and we would like to thank you for your interest in our company's tours. We have lots of tours to visit Egypt. If you are interested in places near the sea, we have tours in Sharm El Sheikh, Hurghada and Dahab. You can enjoy the views, fine weather and water sports. There are also tours to ancient places in Cairo such as the Pyramids and ancient places in Luxor and Aswan. There is much more information about our tours in Egypt.

We hope to hear from you soon.

Bye,

Ecotours

Skills EXercises

Write an essay of about (150) words on one of the following:

The role of the Egyptian people in encouraging tourism.

The ancient monuments are the greatest tourist attraction in Egypt.

A) Translate into Arabic:

1. Tourism is a huge industry that can add to a country's national income. Therefore, Egypt has taken different measures to attract as many tourists as possible.

2. It is believed that tourism can encourage understanding and cooperation among different nations and cultures.

- 3. Tourists in Egypt enjoy safari trips as they spend their time in natural places in deserts. These trips are great attractions to them.
- deserts. These trips are great attractions to deserts. These trips are great attractions and get people accustomed to other deserts. These trips are great attractions and get people accustomed to other deserts. cultures. It is really useful for the old and the young.
- cultures. It is really useful for the old and the such as the TV and the intendent.

 5. Due to passive modern ways of entertainment such as the TV and the intendent. young people lack physical fitness and body flexibility.
- 6. The political crises in the Middle East have a big effect on other parts of the world. Illegal immigration is one of their basic consequences.

B) Translate into English:

. نهم وزارة الآثار بإقامة المعارض للآثار المصرية بالخارج لتشجيع السياح على زيارة مصر. والما الساحة ما لم نقضي على الإرهاب ولذلك تدعو مصر إلى التعايش السلمي والتسامح. و من المنطقة الشباب بأفلام العنف ظاهرة تستحق اهتمام كل علماء الاجتماع والمفكرين لمحاولة إيجاد الحلول لها. البعرة المالم بحريق غابات الأمازون في البرازيل لأنها جزء من الغابات الاستوائية التي تسمى "رثة الأرض". ويودى ارتفاع الأسعار إلى كثير من المشكلات الأسرية فمتطلبات الأسرة الأساسية أصبحت تمثل عبتًا كبيرًا

Enrich your Vocabulary

accustomed to	معتاد على	horizons	اُنْق
attractions	عوامل جذب	illegal	ن شرعی
broaden	يومنع	immigration	أبجرة
cause	قضية	measures	إجراءات
consequences	عواقب	passive	ىلى
crises	أزمات	peaceful co-existence	انعابش السلمي
fairs	المعارض	phenomenon	عاهرة
flexibility	مرونة	requirements	نطلبات



Based on Unit 15

لمزيد من الامتحانات على هذه الوحدة ادخل على

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- means the beliefs, behaviour, art and ideas of a society.
 - a) Culture
- b) Architecture
- c) Agriculture
- d) Manufacture
- This hotel has got good because of the good service provided.
 - a) operation
- b) reputation
- c) corporation
- d) population
- When something is good for money, it is high quality considering the price a) volume
 - b) value
- c) vice

d) vote



	off the street because	se of the fire :	
The police	off the street because b) closed ill, I switched off the en b) damaged me – you're my last	c) established	d) blooked
daniag of the h	ill, I switched off the en	gine and we just	d) blocked
the is	h) damaged		ao wit the other side.
a) crashed help	b) damaged me – you're my last	*************	d) parked
a) resort see th	me – you're my last b) goal he head teacher. I want to	o discuss something with	d) method
	L. V. mandala	- B	ner.
			d) out
ALF VOU WISH	b) don't need to	incalcine,	
a) have to	house, you	onsider all the costs	d) need
Refore you buy	Is) have got	and the costs.	
a) needn't	b) have got	ill	d) need to
MI VISIC	b) had to	n) don't have	
a) must	b) had to	vas a holiday	d) need to
dI go to	b) chould have go	a didn't peed to	The second of
a) have to	b) should have go	rothers	d) must
	Alliette of all my c	TOUICIA.	
a) the least	b) the less	but their clothes must be	u) less than
Teachers	wear suits for work,	o) mustn't	neat and clean.
Students	use their mobile pho	a) have to	d) needn't
			III IICCUII L
The monitors	be cleaned befo	a) don't need	d) mustn't
a) have to	b) needn't	c) uon i necu	istely
If I got a fine for s	speeding and I	pay 500 pounds infined	d) needn't
a) must	b) have to	c) had to	u) necun i
Read the follow	wing passage, then ans	wer the questions:	_

In the wild, it often comes down to a predator and prey. There is the hunter and there is the hunted. Organisms want to stay alive. They hide or escape from animals who would like to eat them. So how do they do it? They adapt to their environment.

One very helpful adaptation is called camouflage. You may have been surprised at some time by an animal that used camouflage. It blended into its surroundings so well that you nearly missed seeing it. Its colouring, markings or other physical features allowed it to blend in to the area around it.

Animals use camouflage to fool a predator. The hidden animal is not seen when a predator scans an area looking for food. Wild goats, for example, have coats that make them look invisible among rocks. A baby giraffe's coat helps it hide among the grass and trees. A chameleon is a lizard that will change colours depending on the surface it is on.

Camouflage often works the other way around, too. Predators can use camouflage to trap their prey. A predator can attack unexpectedly an animal if it wants to eat. The prey animal doesn't see danger because the predator blends into the habitat. A leopard's spotted coat helps it blend in to the background and sneak up on its prey.

Another popular adaptation is mimicry. Mimicry is when an animal has the physical characteristics that makes it look like another animal or a plant. Some moths look like a wasp. Predators that don't like wasps will think the moth is a wasp and not eat it.

A)	Choose	the correct	answer	from a	lv	e or de

C ~		- 100	 -	 -
Camouflage often works to				
Carriouriage Often Works to	heli	1		
C "I OIKS III	1115-111			

- a) the prey
- b) the predator
- c) the prey and the predator
- d) the wasp
- What helps the animal to blend in to the area around it is its
 - a) physical features

- b) size and strength
- c) intelligence and wisdom
- d) fear from the predator
- If a chameleon was on a green leaf, what colour do you think it would be?
 - a) Brown.
- b) Blue.
- c) Yellow.
- d) Green.
- When animals want to look like something a predator doesn't want to eat, they use
 - a) camouflage
- b) mimicry
- c) wasps
- d) moths

B) Answer the following questions:

- 21 What is the function of camouflage in the wild?
- What's the difference between camouflage and mimicry?
- 23 If you were a wild animal, would you rather have the ability to mimic another animal or the ability to camouflage yourself? Why?
- 24 Give evidence that camouflage can help people, too.

25 Translate into Arabic:

Opposing terrorism has been tried by many countries however; terrorists are still getting support by various organisations to achieve their goals in many countries.

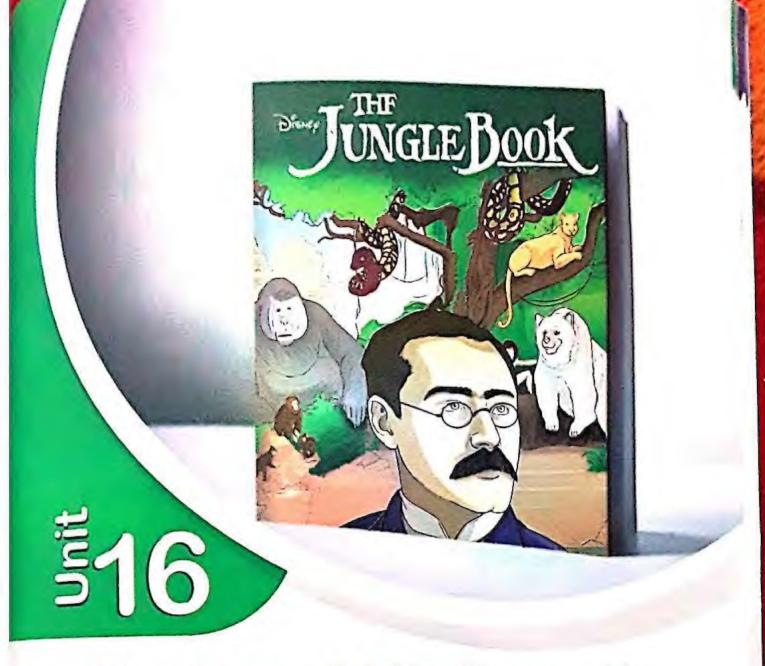
26 Translate into English:

- تشنهر مصر بكثير من أماكن الجذب السياحي التي لو أحسنا استغلالها لأصبحنا من أغنى الدول بسبب العملة الصعبة التي يمكن أن تجلبها.

27 Write an essay of about 180 words on the following topic:

The role of the Egyptian people in encouraging tourism.





Rudyard Kipling: If

Objectives

Listening : Listening for gist; listening for detail

Grammar : Participle clauses

Reading : Reading for gist; reading for specific information

Critical thinking: Becoming a successful person

Functions : Talking about dreams and ideals

Writing : Writing about a famous poet

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary and Expressions

2im(n)(v)(cd)	ا مدن/ بهدف	Inenia
bear (v)		inspire (v) (d)
deal in (v) dealt	بنحمل	knave (n)
foe (n)	يتعامل/يتاجر في	Stoon (s.)
give way to (v)	علمو اخصم	twisted (adj)
Stow rd (x)	اسع	unforgiving (adj)
impostor (n)	ينمو/ينضج	virtue (n)
inspiring (adj)	بالتعم / بالعن	worth (adi) (n)
inspiration (n)	استار:	worthless (adj) مناه المناه ا
keep your head	الهام/ وحى ١٠٠١ ـ د د د لك	worm-out (adi)
lose your head	تحافظ على هدونك	make allowance for و المار إنساهل من the common touch (من
· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	تفقد أعصابك	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
		العام (التعامل بود مع عامة الناس)

Vocabula	on Listening
	Ou Pro

achieve (v) (d)	
achievement (n)	يحقق/ينجز
adult (n)	إنجاز
amount (n)	بالغ/ داشد
author (n)	المند/ فيد
countryside (n)	مزلف
decide (v) (d)	- فوما
decision (n)	يقرر
develop (v) (ed)	قرار
	يطور

development (n)	. 1
editor (n)	المبة الطور بدرا رئيس التحريو
jungle (n)	مرازا رشما رسمارين
later (adv)	يد بدار
local (adj)	grite
nature (n)	فيغ
natural (adj)	فيعى
poem (n)	فبلا
poet (n)	دو
return (v) (ed)	Sec. 6.1
successful (adj)	2"

Jocabulary on P	leading	lie (v) (d)	ریب
loca. Or.		master (n)	ميد
lame (v) (d)	يلوم	ordinary (adj)	۔ عادی
ount (v) (ed)	يعد/ يعتمد	thoughts (n)	آراء/ أفكار
rowd (n)	جمهور	trap (n)	فخ/مصيدة
saster (n)	كارثة	triumph (n) (v) (ed)	انتصاد <i> </i> ینتصر
oubt (v) (ed) (n)	يشك/شك	trust (v) (ed) (n)	بئق ف <i>ى ئةة</i>
$\mathfrak{g}(v)$ (ed)	يملا	truth (n)	حقيقة / صدق
00l (n)	شخص أحمق	wise (adj)	حكيم
ate (v) (d)	يكره	wisdom (n)	حكمة
Entred (n)	كراهية		

Critical Thinking, Communication & Workbook Vocabulary

بطانية	line (n)	سطر (شعری)
شجاع	motivation (n)	دافع/ تحفيز
متميز / ذكي	old-fashioned (adj)	قديم الطراز
قلعة	organised (adj)	منظم
وصف	practise (v) (d)	يمارس/يتمرن على
دبلوماسي	rhyme (n) (v) (d)	قافية/ يتناغم
شوح/ تفسير	sensible (adj)	عاقل/حكيم
كريم	teenager (n)	مراهق
مثالي	understanding (adj)	متفهم
خيالي/ مبدع	verses (n)	بيات شعرية
	شجاع متميز/ ذكى قلعة وصف دبلوماسى شرح/ تفسير كريم	motivation (n) متميز/ ذكى old-fashioned (adj) organised (adj) practise (v) (d) rhyme (n) (v) (d) sensible (adj) teenager (n) video understanding (adj)

Focus on Vocabulary

aim مدف/بهدف what you are hoping to achieve

bravely accept or deal with a painful or difficult

bear situation

deal in یتعامل/یتاجر فی do business with

foe عدو/خصم an enemy

give way to allow

grow up ينمر/ينضج develop from being a child to being an adult

impostor نصاب/محثال someone who pretends to be someone else

inspiring haking someone want to do or achieve something

knave وغد/محتال a man who is not honest

stoop ۱ بمشى متمایلًا/ بتنازل walk with your head forward and down

twisted ملتو/متغير المعنى changed the meaning

unforgiving القلب difficult, not kind

virtue افضيلة a good moral quality that someone has

2040

out	تالف/ بال	damaged because it has been used so much
worn-out	مساو/ مستحق	• the amount that could be produced in that time
worth	تحافظ على هدوثك	remain calm in a difficult situation
lose your head	تفقد أغصابك	▶ don't remain calm in a difficult situation
make allowance for	يتساهل مع	because they have a problem or disadvantage
the common touch	الشعور العام (التعامل بود مع عامة الناس)	the ability to be friendly or ordinary people

Expressions & Idioms

go wrong	يسوء/يتعطل	introduce an explanation	يقدم تفسيرًا
have meetings	لديه اجتماعات	stay calm	يبقى هادئًا
have the ability	لديه القدرة	work very well جدًّا	يعمل بشكل جيد ــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــ

Phrases & Prepositions

		THE RESERVE OF THE PERSON NAMED IN COLUMN TWO IS NOT THE OWNER, THE PERSON NAMED IN COLUMN TWO IS NAMED IN COLUMN	· C 0.0
amazed by	مذهول بـ	hear of	یکذب علی
blame on	يضع اللوم على	lie to	يرجع إلى
consist of	يتكون من	return to	یفکر فی
different from	مختلف عن	thank of	يعمل لصالح
famous for	مشهور بـ	work for	

Words, Synonyms and Antonyms

Word	Meaning	المرادف Synonym	المضاد Antonym	
impostor	نصاب/محتال	dodger	honest	امين
adult	بالغ/راشد	grown up/ mature	infant/immature صغير/رضيع	طفل
inspiring	ملهم	encouraging	discouraging	مبط
stoop	يتنازل/ يخضع	descend	rise ريرتفع	يعلو
unforgiving	قاسى القلب	cruel	tolerant tolerant	منسا
virtue	فضيلة	ethic	vice	رذيلا
blame	يلوم	accuse	approve/ praise مسن/ یثنی	نسإ
disaster	كارثة	catastrophe	blessing	نعمة
doubt	يشك	confusion	certainty	تأكد
trust	ثقة	faith	disbelief نقة	عدم
wise	حكيم	sensible	foolish	أحمز

Notes on Vocabulary

▶ lie	lay	
lie/lied/lied/lying		، بکذب
I could tell from her f	ace that she lied to the judge.	
lie/lay/lain/lying		يرقد/ تقع
He was lying on the b	ed smoking a cigarette.	C
The town lies in the n	orth of the country.	
lay/laid/laid		تضع البهض
The farmer sold all the	e eggs which the hens had laid.	ب بیش



Adjectives ending with -ed/-ing

Verb	Adjectives endir	ig with -ed	Adjectives
hore inspire frighten	inspired frightened	متضجر مُلهَم خائف ما وقع عليه الفعل.	Adjectives ending with -ing boring ممل inspiring frightening

- تستخدم الصفات المنتهية بـ (ed) لوصف من ما وقع عليه الفعل.

I didn't finish the film because I was bored.

The children were very frightened when they saw the lion.

- تستخدم الصفات المنتهية بـ (ing) لوصف من/ ما سبب الفعل.

The film was boring, so we left the cinema.

Some scenes of the film are frightening especially for children.

لاحظ الآتي: هناك بعض الصفات تتهي بـ ive أو ful أو التصريف الثالث للفعل مثل:

impressed impress impressive متأثر delightful مبتهج forgiving معذور/غیر ملام مؤثر delighted delight forgiven forgive مسامح / غفور

Using hyphen (-)

عند استخدام بعض العبارات كصفة لاسم يتبعها فإننا نضيف شرطة (-) أو أكثر.

wom-out tools a two-and-a-half-metre-long pole

عمود طوله متران ونصف

a seventeenth-century house

بيت من القرن السابع عشر

بنت عمرها خمسة أعوام a five-year-old girl أدوات بالية

a one-metre-long snake ثعبان طوله متر

a thirty-kilometre-an-hour-long wind رياح بسرعة ثلاثين كيلو مترًا في الساعة

imaginative

imaginary

maginative

Noble Prizes are awarded to imaginative people who did great things.

خيالي (بعيد عن الواقع)

The story is totally imaginary, not based on real life.

المحال المحادة) المحال المحادة) المحال المحادة) المحال المحادة) المحادة محددة) المحادة محددة مح

Check Point (1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: The road has been dug up in order to electrical cables. b) lay a) lie d) lip c) loop This book is very I don't think I'll finish it. d) boredom c) boring b) bored a) bore The Davis Cup is an important tennis championship. b) national a) local d) international c) folk Children usually experience a lot of fears at early age. b) imaginative a) imaginary d) unimaginative c) imagination All employees in the company have three weeks and all the holidays off. b) national a) local d) international c) folk 6 We spent our holiday in a town which halfway between Rome and Florence. c) loops d) lips b) lays a) lies We really need a/an solution to the litter problem in Cairo. b) imaginative a) imaginary c) imagination d) unimaginative Wafaa didn't want to watch the film about dinosaurs because she easily gets

a) frighten

c) frightening

b) frightened

d) fright

(1) ,5,1,00

كار/بالغين ١١١

مزائب (2)

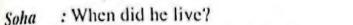


Listening Text (1)

Mariam: Have you seen the film, The Jungle Book? It's about a boy who grows up⁽¹⁾ in the jungle.

Soha : I've heard of it, but I haven't seen it.

Mariam: It's a really good story. It was written by an English writer called Rudyard Kipling. I liked the film so much that I decided to read a book about the author. He had an interesting life and wrote children's books, books for adults, and poems.



Mariam: He was born in India in 1865.

Soha : Did Kipling like India?

Mariam: Yes. Growing up in India, he developed a love of the markets and Indian people.

Soha: Where did he go to school?

Mariam: He went to school in England and became the editor of the school newspaper.

Soha: When did he start to write books?

Mariam: After he returned to India. He worked for a local newspaper, often thinking of stories in the evening.

Soha: When did he write The Jungle Book?

Mariam: That was a few years later. Kipling married an American woman and they built a large house in the American countryside. He wrote *The Jungle Book* there in 1894, a year after their first daughter, Josephine, was born. They then had a second daughter and a son. Kipling loved children, and children loved his books!

Soha: Did he stay in America?

Mariam: No. The family decided to return to England in 1896. They later lived in an old house in England with a big garden. Kipling enjoyed writing there. Writing stories and poems for adults and children, he became very successful.

Soha: Which is his most famous poem?

Mariam: It's a poem called "If".

Soha : What is it about?

0 209

Mariam: The speaker in the poem teaches his son what to do and what not to do to become a successful person. Reading the poem, you

feel that you want to do well at everything! It's very inspiring (5) ناس الغلب (5) . Shall I read you my favourite part?

: Yes, please. Soha

ساو (١٥)

Mariam: "If you can fill the unforgiving(5) minute

With sixty seconds' worth' of distance run,

Yours is the Earth and everything that's in it!"

This means that you should use your time well. If you do this, you can achieve anything.

Soha : I'd like to read all of the poem!



If

If you can keep your head when all about you Are losing theirs and blaming it on you; If you can trust yourself when all men doubt you, But make allowance for their doubting too: If you can wait and not be tired by waiting, Or, being lied about, don't deal in lies, Or being hated don't give way to hating, And yet don't look too good, nor talk too wise;



لونجحت في الحفاظ على عقلك فيما كل من حولك بندون عفولهم، ويلومونك على ذلك. لو وثقت بنفسك حين يشك بك الجميع واختلفت، وغم هذا، أعذارًا لشكوكهم. لواستطعت الانتظار، ولم تسأمه لُو كَذَبُوا عَلَيك، ولم تنغمس في الكذب لوكنت مكروها ولم تطلق العنان للكراهية ولم تنخذ، رغم هذا، صفات المفرطين في التبل الرحديث الموغلين في الحكمة

If you can dream — and not make dreams your master;
If you can think — and not make thoughts your aim,
If you can meet with Triumph and Disaster
And treat those two impostors just the same:
If you can bear to hear the truth you've spoken
Twisted by knaves to make a trap for fools,
Or watch the things you gave your life to, broken,
And stoop and build'em up with worn-out tools;

لو استطعت أن تحلم، ولم تجعل الحلم سيدك لو استطعت أن تفكر، ولم تجعل الفكر غايتك لو التقيت بالظفر والهزيمة وعاملت أولئك المخادعين على السواء لو تحملت أن تسمع الحقائق التي خرجت من فمك يلويها الأو غاد ليخدعوا بها الساذجين أو تراقب ما وهبت عمرك من أجله وهو يحطم، لكنك تنحني وتشيده من جديد بما تملك من أدوات بالية

If you can talk with crowds and keep your virtue,
Or walk with Kings – nor lose the common touch,
If neither foes nor loving friends can hurt you,
If all men count on you, but none too much:
If you can fill the unforgiving minute
With sixty seconds' worth of distance run,
Yours is the Earth and everything that's in it,
And – which is more – you'll be a Man, my son!

لو استطعت التحدث مع الجموع دون أن تفقد فضيلتك أو سرت مع الملوك ولم تفقد إحساس العامة لو أخفق الأعداء والخلان في إيذاتك لو حسبت لكل رجل حسابه، ولم تبالغ به لو ملات الدقيقة التي لا تغفر يستين ثانبة من جرى المسافات فستكون لك الأرض وكل ما عليها وتكون - وهذا الأهم - رجلاً، يا ولدى

Notes on	some sentence	es Itom (ristering	a reading) texts
I liked the film		l to read a book about t	
	بما صفة.	جدًّا لدرجة أن وأحيانًا يأتي بين	خدم so that بمعنى
- The film was s	so exciting that I decid		1
		فعل (decide).	يخدم (المصدر + 10) بعد ال
2 Yes. Growing u	p in India, he develop	ed a love of the market	s and Indian people
		and children, he becar	
		ين للربط بمعنى (عندما when	
After he returne	d to India, he worked	for a local newspaper.	يهجده صيعه رع ١٠٠٠ عي ١٠٠٠
		جملتين في زمن الماضي البسيه	لاحظ أنه من الممكن استخدام
	Vocabula	ary Exercises	
Choose the correct	answer from a, b, c	or d:	H.
		ew in the ju	ngle.
a) up	b) down	c) in	d) off
Our English teach	her is very	. He teaches us to do w	ell at everything.
a) aspiring	b) hostile	c) inspiring	d) sociable
I can't bear this p	lace. The weather her	e is very in	winter.
a) moderate	b) forgiven	c) forgiving	d) unforgiving
Thieves broke the	e shop window and ste	ole jewellery	millions of pounds.

b) useful

Grandfather has always been a source of to all our family members for his great achievements.

a) aspiration b) recognition c) invention d) inspiration

Naguib El Mistekawy is considered one of the best sports in Egypt and the Arab World.

- a) diplomats b) directors c) editors d) advisers The field was full of diseased plants which are to the farmer.
- a) worth b) worthy c) worthless d) worthlessness
- Our teacher allowance for our friend and gave him extra time to answer the exam as he missed the school bus.
 - a) took b) did c) brought d) made

a) value

asked th	e servant to make the	water as hot as the baby	can
The lady	e servant to make the v b) risk	c) bear	d) dislike
a) enable	is someone who preten b) knave	ds to be someone else.	
a) editor	b) knave	c) foe	d) impostor
a) edito.	this lesson is to practi	se speaking English.	
a) cause	b) imposter	c) aim	d) reason
a) cause	does not in	guessing. He is interes	ted in research.
	III licat		u deur
a) flade	ople is a we	should train our childr	en on.
· intra	D) vice	C) TISK	u) task
= cooking and unb	nealthy food are the mo	ost seriouso	f humans.
a) fees	b) fares	c) fumes	d) foes
The boy is wearing	ng a pair of	jeans as he is very poo	г.
a) modern	b) new	c) worn-out	d) astonished
The door of the la	ab wasn't high enough	, so I had to	
a) stoop	b) debt	c) walk	d) run
My parents alway	ys advise me not to	my head in dif	ficult situations.
a) keep	b) lose	c) win	d) miss
Messi missed the	e first game of the seas		ankle.
a) brave	b) wasted	c) valuable	d) twisted
Ministers and no	liticians are always ca	reful not to lose the	touch.
a) general	b) strange	c) common	d) private
My teacher warr	ned me that the man I	met in the street was	not honest saying that he
was a/an		25000 100 010 010 010 010	
a) prince	b) knave	c) assistant	d) knight
We gray up in th	ne, surround		
a) desert	b) beach	c) shore	d) countryside
The Amora	in Couth Amer	rice has places that have	ven't been explored yet.
a) in al-	b) park	c) space	d) station
It is better	b) park	- true lovers of	-,
a) solleved tha	t poets and painters ar	e true lovers or	d) strength
power	b) force	c) nature	u) suchgui
Tou shouldn't	all your prob	olems on your family.	d) award
a) reward	b) blame	c) accuse	a) awaru
Ine earthquake v	was a terrible	that caused thousar	ids of deaths.
a) aspire	La Victoria de La compa	c) blessing	a) disaster
Ine police	the man because	e he suddenly bought :	an expensive house.
a) doubted	b) assured	c) risked	d) concluded

Many people can t	fall into the	of putting work befor	e family.
a) tower	b) trap	c) tunnel	d) trip
On October 6th we	celebrate our	over our enemy.	
a) loss	b) disaster		d) battle
My son promised	that he would never	to me again.	
a) trust	b) lie	c) cheat	d) trick
My uncle has wor	ked as a in r	nany Egyptian embas	sies around the world
a) fighter	b) programmer	c) politician	d) diplomat
Using	is very popular in poetr	v of all languages.	1
a) draft	b) note	c) rhyme	d) song
It would be	to ask your parent	s for advice about yo	ur problems.
a) sensible	b) sensitive	c) unwise	d) affecting
Wearing a hat has	become in i	many countries. Very	few people do that
a) old-fashioned	b) modern	c) stylish	d) customary
The teacher asked	l us to learn the first two	o of the po	em by heart.
	b) notes		
	decision when yo		
	b) wise		
	ue friend who they		
a) cheat	b) trick	c) trust	d) lie
The police refuse	d to an expla	anation for arresting t	he men.
a) demand	b) ask	c) perform	d) introduce
My father couldn	't calm whe	n he saw the children	wasting their time.
a) lose	b) stay	c) continue	d) get
If you follow the	easy instructions, your	project really can't	wrong.
a) apply	b) come	c) go	d) invent
Students are always	ys in need of a good	to continue	their studies.
a) motivation	b) innovation	c) adventure	d) risk
This car is so exp	ensive that	people can't afford it.	
a) wealthy			d) extraordinary
13 The of	money father gives me	e isn't enough for foc	d and transport.
a) quality	b) account		d) type
Many people nov	v look for medicines m	ade of ma	terials such as plants.
a) artificial	b) synthetic	c) sensitive	d) natural
45 A/An	is a person who isn't ve	ery intelligent and ca	n be cheated easily.
a) knave	b) imposter	c) fool	d) inventor

The company mak	es many devices to hel	p people reach their	weight.
a) ideal	b) idle	c) fake	d) false
Scientists are tryir	ig to provide	solutions to environme	ental problems.
a) imaginary	b) imaginative	c) unimaginative	d) strange
You can trust Waf	aa as she always	the truth about eve	rything.
a) denies	b) devises	c) hides	d) tells
The woman gave	an accurate	of the man who stole he	
	b) exception		d) inspection
I always refuse to	blame my mistakes	other people.	
a) for	b) on	c) at	d) in
0	oen General E	Xercises (Vocab	oulary)
Choose the correct	answer from a, b, c or	· d:	
Most Facebook a	dvertisements are speci	fically at you	ng people.
a) sold	b) aimed	c) expected	d) devised
Building the New	Capital in Egypt took	a great of tim	ne and effort.
a) part	b) quality	c) quantity	d) deal
I told my son not	to to any ba	d student's level and to	avoid him completely.
a) stoop	b) stop	c) rise	d) start
Any footballer	his salt would	love to play for his cou	ntry.
a) having	b) bearing	c) worth	d) costly
My friend's fathe	r gives him a monthly	of 700 pound	s.
a) wage	b) allowance		d) fee
I had a long sumn	ner holiday so I thought	I'd make a/an	of necessity by taking
useful courses. a) vice		V • •	**
	b) value	c) virtue	d) ethic
a) threat		our garden is a real	
	b) triumph	c) fair	d) jungle
a) tele	se expected to	all the blame for poo	r exam results.
u) take	h) give	c) design	d) suffer
a) and will	most of the re	sponsibility, you should	get the rewards.
- TOTOTOTO	la laniau	C) bear	d) clear
a) ave been workin	g all day and I'm worn		
a) away	b) out	c) off	d) down

عبارات اسم الفاعل

Participle clauses

Participle clauses are groups of words which begin with a verb in the -ing form. These clauses can come before or after the main part of a sentence.

عارات اسم الفاعل هي مجموعة من الكلمات التي تنتهي بـ ing - وهذه العبارات تأتي قبل أو بعد الجملة الرئيسية.

Usage

الاستخدام

1. Use participle clauses instead of clauses starting with "as" or "when":

تنخدم عبارات اسم الفاعل لاستبدال الجمل التي بها When/As/While/After وبعدها فاعل وفعل.

- As Sara was walking to town yesterday, she saw two of her school friends.
- Walking to town yesterday, Sara saw two of her school friends.
- When they arrived home late, they found that the door was locked.
- Arriving home late, they found that the door was locked.
- 2. Participle clauses can also be used instead of clauses starting with "and".

ننخدم عبارات اسم الفاعل بدلًا من الجمل التي تبدأ بـ and:

- The bird flew away and made a very loud noise.
- The bird flew away, making a very loud noise.
- 3. The subject of the participle clause must be the same as the subject of the main clause:

 ناعل عبارة اسم الفاعل يجب أن يكون هو نفس الفاعل للجملة الرئيسية.
 - I heard the phone ring and I picked it up.
 - Hearing the phone ring, I picked it up.
 - The car crashed into a garden and knocked down a tree.
 - The car crashed into a garden, knocking down a tree.

Check Point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- in his garden, Kipling wrote some wonderful stories.
 - a) To work
- b) Worked
- c) Working
- d) Being working
- home late one night, Nasser apologised to his father.
 - a) Arriving
- b) Arrived
- c) Arrive
- d) To arrive
- there was going to be a storm, Mr Zaher stayed at home.
 - a) Realise
- b) Realising
- c) Realised
- d) To realise



out of	the window this mon	ning I saw	
up ear	b) Looked ly, Mike decided to g b) Wake	ning, I saw two boys fig c) Look o for a walk in the hills.	hting fiercely. d) Looking
2 1 10	shade, we ate cake a	c) Waking nd drank coffee.	d) Woke
Mr Hassan div	ided his class into thre	c) sitting ee groups,each c) gave	
a) Seeing	us, I ran to the bus sto b) Saw	p very quickly.	d) given
a) spoke	to the doctor, I felt m	uch better.	d) Seen
Beforea) made	a decision, I need to	c) spoken o discuss the problem wi	d) Speaking ith you.
	, , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,	c) making	d) being made

Extra Points

1. To replace a clause of reason (because, as, since + subject + verb).

- تستخدم عبارات اسم الفاعل بدلًا من جمل السببية (because, as, since).

- Because I felt extremely tired, I decided to rest under a tree.

- Feeling extremely tired, I decided to rest under a tree.

2. To replace a relative clause in the active voice.

- لاستبدال عبارة موصولة في المبنى للمعلوم.

- The boy who is talking to Jim is my brother.

- The boy talking to Jim is my brother.

3. To form the negative of participles, we add "not" before the participles.

- لصياغة النفي من اسم الفاعل أو اسم المفعول به فإننا نضيف not قبلهما.

- Not wanting to miss the bus, they ran to the bus stop.

4. After the verbs of sensation: see, hear, feel, smell, listen, watch and notice.

- بعد أفعال الشعور والإحساس السابقة لتعبر عن رؤية أو سماع جزء من الحدث، وعند سماع أو رؤية الحدث كاملًا نستخدم المصدر.

I saw my neighbours leaving the house early this morning.

5. After: catch, find, leave, go, come, spend time, waste time and be busy:

He was busy painting the room.

They wasted the time playing cards.

- left my children doing their homework.



Grammar Exercises

loose the correct ar	iswer from a, b, c or	· d:				
to his fri	ends, he forgot every	thing around him.				
a) To talk	b) Talk	c) Talking	d) Talked			
vegetaria	ans, they don't eat me	eat.	-			
a) To be	b) Been	c) Be	d) Being			
Ahmed got the best	marks all	his teachers.				
a) thanking	b) thanked	c) and thanking	d) thank			
I led the blind man	through the crowd	his hand.				
a) hold	b) holding	c) held	d) being held			
He told her not to eat it, that there was a risk of food poisoning.						
happy w	ith my results, I deci	ded to go out and celebr	rate.			
up in In	dia, he developed a lo	ove of the markets and I	ndian people.			
the poem, you feel that you want to do well at everything!						
a) Being read	b) Read	c) To read	d) Reading			
a) Reached	b) To reach	c) Reach	d) Reaching			
out his	notebook, he began to	o write a poem.				
a) To take	b) Taking	c) Took	d) Take			
the black clouds, Mike continued driving his car.						
a) Not noticing	b) To notice	c) Noticed	d) Notice			
Continue of min he hasses to be a local to the local to t						
a) Felt	b) To feel	c) Feeling	d) Feel			
at his front	door, Mike discovere	ed that he had forgotten	to take his key with his			
a) To arrive	b) Arriving	c) Arrived	d) Arrive			
into tow	n, the man saw an a					
	b) Drove	c) Drive	d) Driving			
7-			-/			
	a) To talk To be Ahmed got the best a) thanking I led the blind man a) hold He told her not to e a) to explain happy w a) Being happy w a) Being happy w a) Grow stories a a) To write he poer a) Being read he top e a) Reached he top e a) Reached he top e a) Reached he top e a) Not noticing he first a) Felt a) To arrive	a) To talk b) Talk vegetarians, they don't eat me a) To be b) Been Ahmed got the best marks a) thanking b) thanked I led the blind man through the crowd a) hold b) holding He told her not to eat it, that it a) to explain b) explained happy with my results, I deci a) Being b) To be a) Grow b) To grow b) To grow compared b) Writing compared b) Writing compared b) Read compared b) Read compared b) To reach compared b) To notice compared b) To notice compared b) To feel compared b) Arriving comp	a) Being read b) Read c) To read			

looked out of th	ne window t	wo cats fighting.	
Sara looke	b) seeing	c) saw	d) to see
* took 2 0000 D	book to read	it was a folig, builing p	ourney.
a) kilowing my name	at the top of my work,	I gave it to the teacher	г.
Weste	DI TO WITE	C) WIIIII	d) Write
on my co	mputer, I discovered th	nat it wasn't working.	
Turning	b) Turn	c) to turn	d) Turned
the bus I	wanted to catch, I ran	to the bus stop.	
Can	b) Seeing	c) To see	d) Saw
Omar threw the ball	, 2 glasses f	ull of lemonade on the	table.
a) breaking	b) break	c) broke	d) to break
in the su	n, I fell asleep and reali	sed nothing.	
a) Lav	b) To lie	c) Lie	d) Lying
I saw my boss while	in front of	his house.	
a) was parking	b) park	c) parking	d) to park
The students sat in t	the class without a teac	her a lot of	noise.
a) make	b) making	c) to make	d) made
to tell the	e truth, the young boy	nade up an excuse.	
a) Wanting	b) To want	c) Wanted	d) Not wanting
through the	things in my bag, I fou	and the passport which	I thought I had lost.
a) Looking	b) To look	c) Looked	d) To looking
the road,	I was nearly knocked	down by a car.	
a) To cross	b) Crossed	c) Crossing	
my fathe	er in the garden, I hurrie	ed to help him with the	work.
a) To find	b) Finding	c) Found	d) Not finding
sick, our	teacher left school ear	ly.	
a) Feel	0, 10 1-1-	-/	d) Feeling
the good	news of my success, I	told my parents who c	congratulated me.
a) Heard	b) Hearing	c) To hear	d) To hearing
to lose m	y passport, I gave it to	my wife to put it in he	er bag.
a) Wanting	b) To want	c) Not wanting	d) Wanted
the news	daily, we know what's	s going on all over the	world.
a) Watching	b) To watch	c) Watched	d) being watched
a good b	oy, he helped his moth	er in the kitchen.	
a) Is	b) Be	c) Being	d) Been
			-

enough mo	oney, they couldn't furn	ish the flat properly.					
	b) Had		d) Not having				
My uncle was sitting			6				
	b) read		d) reading				
on the high							
a) To drive	b) Driving	c) Being driven	d) Drive				
the door, s							
a) Opening			d) Opened				
The children went fro	m house to house	trick or treat.					
a) To play	b) were playing	c) played	d) playing				
Do something. Don't	just stand there	nothing.					
a) to do	b) doing	c) done	d) do				
to know w	hat the homework was,	Hany phoned a friend	d and asked him.				
a) Need	b) Needed	c) To need	d) Needing				
at the scen							
	b) Seeing		d) To see				
at him loud							
	b) Shouted		d) Shout				
to go out t	hat evening, I made an	excuse.					
	b) Not prefer		d) Preferring				
to the part	y, we could hardly refu						
a) Invite		b) Inviting					
c) Having invited	c) Having invited d) Having been invited a new car, my father started saving money a year ago.						
a new car,	my father started savin	g money a year ago.	n n colo				
a) Buying	b) To buy	c) Having bought	a) Bought				
46 the bad ne	ws, Nania sat down and	o) Hoving been teld	J\ To tall				
a) Telling	b) Having told	c) riaving been told	d) to ten				
in dark col	ours, the room needed	b) Having painted					
a) Having been painte	ea	d) To be painted					
c) Painting	- fother I left the house						
48 to wake m	b) Wenting not	c) Not being wanted	d) Not wanting				
a) Wanting	b) Wanting not	act week	u) Not wanting				
My watch was among	b) stolen	c) steal	d) stole				
a) stealing	b) stolen	difficult	d) stole				
a) Steaming Arabic, Jol a) Don't speak	b) Doesn't speak	c) Speaking	d) Not speaking				

(220)

Open General Exercises (Grammar)

arrect a	nswer from a, b, c or d:		
hoose the correct a	B: She won't be here	8 o'clock	
A: Where is Judy:	b) until	c) by the time	d) on
a) after	the tourists the house	Charles Dicke	ns died.
a) that	n my cassette recorder. I d	on't know wou	ld do a thing like that.
Someone has taken	b) what	c) why	d) which
a) who	all day and I'm	m exhausted	G)
I've been working	b) hardly	c) harder	d) hard
a) the nardest	early eighty, he is still ver	v active	
ne is ne	b) Although	c) Despite	d) However
a) Even	brella. It rain.		<u>u, 11</u>
		c) may	d) has to
a) should		-)	
Sherook was cook	ing dinner in the kitchen	-) has been feeding	d) had been feeding
a) was feeding	b) is feeding	c) has been recome	u) mad been recamb
You can't leave the	e table until you	your dinner.	d) finish
a) had finished	b) finished	c) will finish	a) misn
Don't phone me to	onight. I for m	y French exam.	15 211 1
a) study	b) will be studying	c) will study	d) will have studied
Hady was sunburn	nt because he	on the beach for 6 hour	S.
a) is sitting	b) has been sitting	c) had been sitting	d) has sat
	Communication	Skills —	
	Commenteed	جوع إلى ملحق العداجعة	\ لمراجعة المهارات بالتفصيل يرجى الر-
	Language	Functions	
Talking about des	eams and ideals	المثانيات	(الحديث عن الأحلام و
Asia	cams and ideals		/

Asking about dreams and ideals

What would your dream job be?

If you could have any job you liked,

what would you choose?

Would you prefer to be (a leader) or (a member of a team)?

Answers

My dream job would be because ...

• I'd choose to be

• I'd definitely be,

• I'd really like to be

• I could/couldn't be a because

Writing: An Egyptian Poet - Ahmed Shawqi

Ahmed Shawki, nicknamed Prince of Poets, was one of the greatest Arabic poets laureate. He was an Egyptian poet who was one of the most important figures of classical Arab poets. He also was one of the first Arab poets to write poetic plays.

Shawqi was born in Egypt in 1870. He grew up in Cairo to a wealthy family. He studied law and graduated in 1887. The ruler of the Egyptian government sent him to study translation and law in France in 1893. During his stay in France, he began to admire French theatre and poetry. He returned to Egypt and continued writing.

He kept a close friendship with Egyptian patriotic وطنى leaders such as Mustafa Kamel. In 1915, he was sent to exile النفى in Spain. He returned back to Egypt in 1920. The writings of Ahmed Shawqi are rich and varied. He wrote religious, patriotic, historic poems, as well as the distinctive plays he wrote in poetry. Some of the works of Ahmed Shawqi are still taught at schools.

Skills EXercises

- Write an essay of about (150) words on one of the following:
 - How can stories about national heroes inspire young people?
 - The role of literature in spreading virtues among people.
- (2) A) Translate into Arabic:
 - 1. The life of Taha Hussein has always inspired people to improve their lives. His blindness didn't hinder him from great achievements.
 - 2. Students need continuous motivation to excel in their studies. Studying stories and specific poems can help them do so.
 - 3. Education is considered the cornerstone to achieve progress in all fields. That's schools must be attractive places suitable for educational reform.
 - 4. Salah Jaheen was an Egyptian poet who developed the style of contemporary Egyptian poetry. Many of his poems were made into songs.

5. Why do we no longer think of the beauty of nature or stop to enjoy an attractive scene? Did modern technology really change our nature?

6. The Egyptian history is full of great authors who have a great effect on Arab literature and culture.



g) Translate into English;

١- الأحلام لا تتحقق دائمًا لذا يجب أن تكون مستعدًا لأن تغير تطلعاتك في المستقبل. ٢- يلعب الشعر دورًا مهمًا في ترقية المشاعر وتنمية اللوق العام لدى الكبار والصغار.

٣- تهتم مصر بتطوير علاقاتها مع الدول الإفريقية لما تمثله من أهمية اقتصادية لكلا الجانبين.

. حجم حسر بسوير ٤- رغم التطور التكنولوجي الكبير إلا أن العلم يقف عاجزًا أمام الكوارث الطبيعية كالأعاصير والزلازل. . - رسم المعلور المحدوثو على المجرو . ٥- قد تؤدي الخلافات والصراعات الفكرية إلى آثار وخيمة على استقرار الأسر والمجتمعات في العالم.

٦- لا يمتقد كثير من الشباب أن الأدب يمكن أن يلعب دورًا في تطوير المجتمع ودفعه للأمام.

Enrich your Vocabulary

conflicts	الصراعات	motivation	دافع/ حافز
ontemporary	معاصر	promoting	ترنية
omerstone	حجر الزاوية	public taste	الذوق العام
excel	يتميز	stability	استقراد
feelings	مشاعر	style	اسلوب
hurricanes	أعاصير	literature	الأدب



القاموس

قاموس "عربي - إنجليزي - فرنسي"

الأن علم بوابة الأضواء التعليمية

سجّل الأن من خلال: www.aladwaa.com



est 8 Based on Unit 16

لمزيد من الامتحانات على هنه الوحدة ادخل على

Cl	Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:						
	The poor child said that he faced conditions after his father's death.						
	a) forgive	b) forgiven	c) forgiveness	d) unforgiving			
2			r my little brother who				
		b) gives		d) takes			
3	Honesty is an impo-	rtant which	we should keep in our	· life.			
	a) vice	b) virtue	c) risk	d) value			
4	The gardener alway	s complains of the	tools he uses sa	ying that he needs better			
	ones.						
	a) modern		c) worn-out				
5		have recently done a	big to impor	t goods.			
		b) amount		d) concert			
6		ery old and is now					
			c) stooped				
7		,	good look around the	town.			
	Carlot San	b) Not having		d) To have			
8		desk a picti					
	a) painted		b) having painted				
	c) painting		d) paints				
9		y through hard work,	it wasn't easy for him	to give it away.			
	a) Earning		b) Having earned				
-	c) Earned d) Being earned She stood at the corner to her friends.						
10							
program of	a) has talked	b) talks	c) talked	d) talking			
Ш			be a witness to the crim				
	a) Saw	b) Seeing	c) Not seeing	d) To see			
12		of his pocket, he ope b) Takes					
	a) Take	SEASON ON MAIN AND MA	c) Not taking	d) Taking			
13		b) Watch	know what's going on				
Lines.	a) Watched	The second of the second	c) Being watching	d) Watching			
14		ey decided to have lu					
	a) Been	b) Were	c) Be	d) Being			

1							
-	While						
	ridiea	0,	c) .	idy		d) being tidy	
-	enough m	oney, they spent			me last	year.	
	a) Not having	b) Having	c) I	Had		d) Being having	
	Read the following	passage, then a	answer t	he question	ıs:		
	You use energy every day. Energy is the ability to cause change. Any time you move, you are using energy. When you bounce a ball or ride a bike, you use energy from your body to make the ball or the bike move. Your parents cook food for you to eat. They use heat energy to change the food from raw to cooked. Not all energy is used as soon as you get it. Sometimes energy is stored to be used later. Stored energy can be chemical energy stored in a battery or in your body. It can also be potential energy. Potential energy is based on the position of the object. A ball at the top of a hill has potential energy. A soccer player standing ready to kick a ball has potential energy, too. Energy of motion is also called kinetic energy. Potential energy converts, or changes into, kinetic energy when the thing or person begins to move. When the ball starts rolling down hill, kinetic energy is at work. When the soccer player kicks the ball, kinetic energy is at work there, too. Energy often changes forms. When you switch on the light, electricity converts into light. When you eat, chemical energy from your food converts into thermal and mechanical energy that allows you to move and work.						
	When you switch on a cell phone, chemical energy from the cell phone's battery converts into sound energy and light energy.						
	A) Choose the cor	rect answer fro	ma, b,	c or d:			
F	Energy is	4 •					
a) the ability to bounce a ball			b) the ability to cause change.				
	c) the ability to ride a bike			d) the ability to switch on the light			
(N	The other meaning		m the pa	ssage is			
	a) bounce	b) kick		c) store		d) convert	
19	Energy that is base	d on an object's	position	is called			
	a) potential energy	b) kinetic energ		c) thermal	energy	d) mechanical end	ergy
70	The antonym of the word "rayy" is						

c) cooked

a) uncooked

b) fresh

d) natural

B) Answer the following questions:

- What is another name for energy of motion?
- What happens when the thing or person begins to move?
- What do you think the sources of energy we will use in the future?
- Mention two ways by which we can save energy.

Translate into Arabic:

Winning international competitions is one of the ways to relieve the frustration of hard life. It can also be used to enhance patriotism of people.

26 Translate into English:

- بعتبر علماء النفس أن الاستمتاع بالشعر والفن الراقي أحد المظاهر التي تميز المجتمع المتحضر، كما يؤكد ذلك على مدى الثقافة الراقية لدى أفراده.

Write an e-mail of about 180 words:

To your friend Wafaa telling her about a reading competition on famous writers you are going to take part in and asking her for suggestions. Your name is Nourhan.

